WAS THE CIVIL WAR

A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT

FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF

SLAVERY?

Charlestown, July 24th, 1769.

TO BE SOLD,
On THURSDAY the third Day
of AUGUST next,
A CARGO
OF
NINETY-FOUR
PRIME, HEALTHY
NEGROES,

7

中文 SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

Read this Book

Resources

WAS THE CIVIL WAR

A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT

FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF

SLAVERY?

EXPLORING AMERICA'S HISTORY THROUGH COMPELLING QUESTIONS

SUPPORTING QUESTIONS

1 DID SLAVERY CAUSE THE CIVIL WAR?

2 DID WESTWARD EXPANSION CAUSE THE CIVIL WAR?

3 COULD AMERICAN LEADERS HAVE PREVENTED THE CIVIL WAR?

4 COULD THE SOUTH HAVE WON THE CIVIL WAR?

5 WHAT DID THE WAR MEAN?

6 THE UNION WON THE WAR, BUT WHO WON THE PEACE?

WAS THE CIVIL WAR

A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT

FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF

SLAVERY?

By the time the Civil War started in 1860, slavery had been a part of American life for more than 200 years. There had never been a time during the existence of the United States, when slaves had not lived in the "Land of the Free."

But slavery had not always been welcomed. The Founding Fathers had grappled with the question of slavery. Northerners had already in the 1770s and 1780s wanted to find ways to end slavery, but decided that compromising in order to declare independence and ratify the Constitution was more important. In effect, they made a deal with the Devil – trading the creation of the country for the continuation of slavery.

In the Antebellum Period, as the 1800s progressed, calls for the abolition of slavery increased and questions about the spread of slavery into new western territories divided the nation between the free states of the North and the slave states of the South. Although a series of political compromises preserved unity for a time, in 1860 all efforts failed, 11 southern states seceded and four years of civil war ensued.

In 1865 as the war was coming to a close, President Abraham Lincoln wondered if the death and destruction wrought by the war was God's way of punishing Americans, that perhaps God would let the war continue "until every drop of blood drawn with the lash shall be paid by another drawn with the sword."

And that is the question for you. Did America deserve this war? Was slavery such a terrible sin that the only way to make things right was to pay with blood? Was the Civil War, in which more Americans died than any other in our nation's history, as Lincoln called it, a righteous punishment for slavery?

在 1860 年内战开始的时候，奴隶制已经是美国生活的一部分，已经有 200 多年了。在美国存在的时候，从来没有一段时间，奴隶没有住在"自由之国"。

但奴隶制并不总是受到欢迎。创始人已经解决了奴隶制问题。北极已经在 17 世纪 70 年代和 1780 年代想要找到办法来结束奴隶制，但决定为了宣布独立而批准宪法更为重要。实际上，他们与魔鬼达成协议 - 交易国家的继续奴隶制。

在安盟时期，随着十九世纪的进步，要求废除奴隶制的呼吁越来越多，关于奴隶制扩散到新的西方领土的问题将国家与北方的自由国家和南方的奴隶国分开。虽然一系列政治妥协一度保持团结一致，但 1860 年的一切努力都失败了，11 个南部国家分裂，四年的内战随之而来。

1865 年，随着战争即将结束，亚伯拉罕·林肯总统想知道战争造成的死亡和破坏是神惩罚美国人的方式，也许上帝会让战争继续下去"，直到每一滴用鞭子抽血用另一个用剑来支付。"

这是你的问题。美国应该有这场战争吗奴隶制是如此可怕的罪恶，使事情正确的唯一办法就是用血支付？正如林肯所说的那样，内战比美国历史上其他任何一个人都死了，是对奴隶制的正义惩罚？

1

F I R S T   Q U E S T I O N
DID SLAVERY CAUSE THE CIVIL WAR?

WAS THE CIVIL WAR A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF SLAVERY?

INTRODUCTION

From our vantage point in the 21st Century it seems obvious that slavery caused the Civil War. The Southern leaders explicitly talked about slavery when the seceded and formed their government. And slavery ended because of the war. The great hero of the time, President Abraham Lincoln, is remembered as the "Great Emancipator" who freed the slaves. Three amendments to the Constitution, ending slavery, guaranteeing citizenship and granting voting rights all resulted from the war.

But slavery had existed for more than 200 years before 1860 when the war began. Why hadn't slavery caused a war before then? Great leaders like George Washington, Thomas Jefferson and John Adams had declared independence, fought a revolution and forged a new government, writing the Constitution and Bill of Rights all during a time of slavery. They didn't have to fight a war about it.

And if slavery was so bad, why didn't people find a peaceful way to give it up? Why didn't White Americans just decide to free their slaves on their own? What was so special about the United States that we would have to fight a civil war?

After all, Great Britain, France, Mexico and dozens of other nations had ended slavery without fighting wars. Couldn't the United States have done the same?

What do you think? Did slavery cause the Civil War?

介绍

从我们二十一世纪的观点来看，奴隶制显然引起了内战。南方领导人在分离和组建政府时明确地谈到奴隶制。奴隶制由于战争而结束。当时的伟大英雄，亚伯拉罕·林肯总统被认为是释放奴隶的"大解放者"。宪法修正案三项，终止奴隶制，保障公民身份和给予投票权都是战争造成的。

但在 1860 年战争开始之前，奴隶制已经存在了二百多年。为什么没有奴隶制在此之前造成战争？像乔治华盛顿，托马斯·杰斐逊和约翰·亚当斯这样的伟大领导人宣布独立，在一场奴隶制的时候，一个革命革命，建立一个新政府，写下"宪法"和"权利法案"。他们没有必要打这场战争。

如果奴隶制这么糟糕，为什么没有人找到和平的方式来放弃呢？白美国人为什么不决定自己释放奴隶？美国究竟有什么特别之处呢，我们要打内战呢？

毕竟，英国，法国，墨西哥等几十个国家在没有战争的情况下结束了奴隶制。美国不可以这样做吗？

你怎么看？奴隶制是否引起内战？

THE PECULIAR INSTITUTION

The **Peculiar Institution** is slavery. Its history in America begins with the earliest European settlements and ends with the Civil War. Yet its echo continues to reverberate loudly. Slavery existed both in the North and in the South, at times in equal measure. The industrialization of the North and the expansion of demand for cotton in the South shifted the balance so that it became a regional issue, as the southern economy grew increasingly reliant on cheap labor. As is always true in history, cultures grow and thrive in all conditions. Two interdependent cultures emerged in the American South before the Civil War — the world the slaveholders created for themselves and the world of their slaves. Even though slaves were not permitted to express themselves freely, they were able to fight back even though enchained.

Although African-Americans had been brought to British America since the time of Jamestown colony, American slavery adopted many of its defining characteristics in the 19th century. The cotton gin had not been invented until the last decade of the 1700s. This new invention led the American South to emerge as the world's leading producer of cotton. As the South prospered, Southerners became more and more nervous about their future. Plantation life became the goal of all the South, as poor yeoman farmers aspired to one day become planters themselves. Rebellions and abolitionists led Southerners to establish an even tighter grip on the enslaved.

Even amidst the bondage in the South, there was a significant population of free African-Americans who were creating and inventing and being productive.

The Peculiar Institution refused to die in the United States although it had ended in many other nations. Great Britain had outlawed the slave trade long before its former American colonies. New nations in the Western Hemisphere, such as Mexico, often banned slavery upon achieving independence.

But in America, political, religious, economic and social arguments in favor of the continuation of slavery emerged. Slavery became a completely sectional issue, as few states above the **Mason-Dixon Line** still permitted human bondage. These arguments also revealed the growing separation in the needs and priorities of the Northern industrial interests versus the Southern planting society.

精神机构

特殊机构是奴隶制的。它在美国的历史始于最早的欧洲定居点，并以内战结束。然而，它的回声继续大声回响。奴隶制存在于北方和南方，有时在同等程度上存在。由于南方经济越来越依赖廉价劳工，北方的工业化和南方棉花需求的扩大导致了平衡，从而成为一个地区问题。在历史上一直是真实的，文化在各种条件下都会发展壮大。在内战之前，美国南方出现了两个相互依存的文化－奴隶主为自己创造的世界和奴隶世界。即使奴隶不允许自由表达，即使被束缚，他们也能够反击。

美国奴隶制自詹姆斯敦殖民地以来一直被带到英国，虽然在十九世纪的时候，美国的奴隶制已经取代了很多的特征。直到十七世纪的最后十年，这种棉花都没有被发明。这一新发明使美国南方成为世界领先的棉花生产国。随着南方的繁荣，南方人越来越关心他们的未来。种植园生活成为南方的目标，贫穷的农民有朝一日渴望成为种植者。叛乱和废除奴隶主导，南方人对奴隶制度进行了更为紧密的控制。
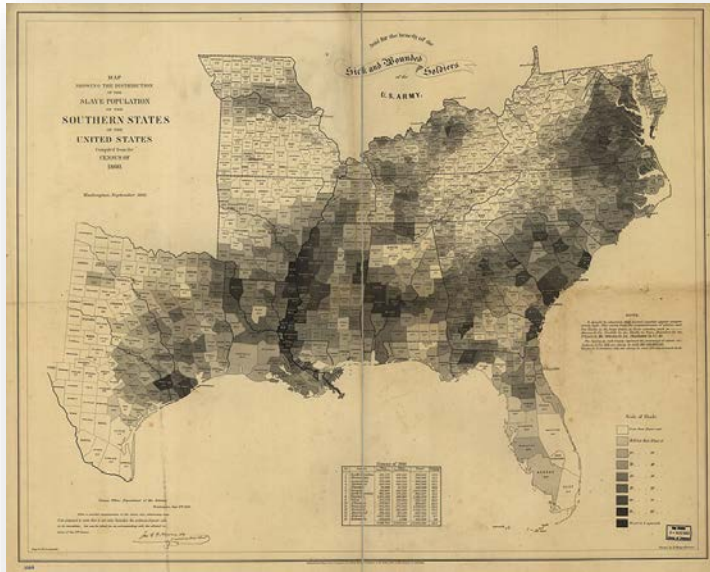
即使在南方的奴役之下，也有非常多的自由的美国黑人正在创造和发明生产力。

特殊机构虽然在许多其他国家已经结束，但拒绝在美国死亡。英国早在其前美国殖民地就已经非法奴隶奴隶贸易。西半球的新国家，如墨西哥，经常在实现独立时禁止奴隶制。

但在美国，出现了政治，宗教，经济和社会论据支持继续奴隶制。奴隶制成为一个完全分裂的问题，因为梅森－迪克森线以上的几个州仍然允许人类的奴役。这些论点也揭示了北方工业利益与南方种植社会的需求和优先事项日益分离。

Secondary Source: Map

This map shows the density of the slave population in 1860. Notice that most slaves were concentrated in the tobacco growing Tidewater Region of Virginia, and in the cotton growing region of the Deep South.

次要资料来源：地图

这张地图显示了 1860 年奴隶人口的密度。注意，大多数奴隶集中在弗吉尼亚州烟草种植的潮汐地区和深南的棉花种植地区。

KING COTTON

Removing seeds from newly picked cotton is not as simple as it sounds. Cotton is sticky when removed from the plant, and pulling the seeds from its grasp is difficult. Throughout the 1700s, cotton production was expensive because of the huge amount of labor necessary to remove the seeds. This changed with the invention of the cotton gin. What once was painstakingly slow was now relatively fast. By the end of the 18th century, demand for cotton was increasing as power looms were able to turn out great quantities of cloth. With the **cotton gin**, Southern cotton plantations could supply the world's demand.

Ironically, the man who would make cotton king was born to a Massachusetts farmer. Almost immediately after graduating from Yale University, **Eli Whitney** traveled south. While staying at the Savannah plantation of Mrs. Nathanael Green in 1792, the widow of the Revolutionary War general, Whitney created the device that changed the world. Whitney built a machine that moved stiff, brush-like teeth though the raw cotton. To his delight, the teeth removed a very high percentage of the nettlesome seeds. Up to this point, it took up to ten hours to produce a pound of cotton, with very little profit. The cotton gin required many fewer workers to operate and ultimately grew to produce a thousand pounds of cotton per day.

As an indication of the impact of this invention, the total amount of cotton being exported was about 138,000 pounds in the year the cotton gin was invented. Two years later, the amount of cotton being exported rose ten-fold, to 1,600,000 pounds. Before the gin, the prevailing

国王棉

从新挑选的棉花中去除种子并不像听起来那么简单。棉花从植物中取出时是粘稠的，并且从种子上抓下种子是困难的。在整个十七世纪，棉花生产是昂贵的，因为除去种子所需的大量劳动力。随着棉花杜松子酒的发明而改变了。过去一直很慢的是现在比较快。到十八世纪末，随着电力织机能够出售大量的布料，棉花需求也在增加。用棉花棉花，南方棉花种植园可以满足世界的需求。

讽刺的是，制造棉花王的人是马萨诸塞州农民生来的。从耶鲁大学毕业后几乎马上，惠特尼（Eli Whitney）前往南部。惠特尼在革命战争总理的遗 in 1792 年在纳萨内尔·格林夫人的萨凡纳种植园时，创造了改变世界的装置。惠特尼（Whitney）建立了一台机器，它通过原始棉花移动了刚毛，刷状牙齿。为了他的喜悦，牙齿去除了非常高百分比的净重的种子。到目前为止，花了十个小时的时间生产一磅棉花，利润很少。棉花杜松子酒需要更少的经营人员，最终每天生产出一千磅的棉花。

作为本发明影响的指标，出口棉花的总量在发明棉花的当年约为 138,000 磅。两年后，出口棉花数量上升了十倍，达到160 万磅。在杜松子酒前，国家领导人的普遍思想是奴隶制将逐渐消

thinking of the leaders of the country was that slavery would gradually disappear. This all changed when slaves could be used to cultivate millions of pounds of cotton for markets all over the world. Eli Whitney never made a cent on his invention because it was widely reproduced before it could be patented. Determined to duplicate his inventive success, he developed the milling machine, which led to the development of interchangeable parts and the northern factory system. This one individual played a great part in creating the industrial North, as well as the plantation South.

This phenomenal and sudden explosion of success of the cotton industry gave slavery a new lease on life. Prior to this, most thoughtful Southerners, including Washington and Jefferson, had seen slavery as an evil that must eventually be swept away. But with the Southern economy now based on the production and export of cotton, these beliefs were seen as old-fashioned, and slavery now was seen as an institution to be cherished. The importance of the cotton industry for both the North and the South led Americans to call their primary export **King Cotton.** Cotton and the millions of slaves who cultivated it became the foundation of Southern economy, Southern culture, and Southern pride.

失。当奴隶可以用于为世界各地的市场培育数百万磅的棉花时，这一切都改变了。艾利·惠特尼（Eli Whitney）从未对他的发明做出了一个分数，因为在发明专利之前被广泛转载。决定重创创新成果，他开发了铣床，从而开发了可互换部件和北方工厂系统。这个人在创造工业北部以及种植园南部方面发挥了很大的作用。

棉花行业的这个惊人的突然爆发的成功使奴隶制成为新的生活租赁。在此之前，包括华盛顿和杰斐逊在内的多数周到的南方人将奴隶制视为一种最终必须被扫除的邪恶。但是，南方经济现在以棉花的生产和出口为基础，这些信仰被认为是老式的，奴隶制现在被视为珍惜的机构。棉花业对北方和南方的重要性导致美国人将其称为主要出口国王棉花。棉花和数百万耕种的奴隶成为南方经济，南方文化和南方骄傲的基础。

Primary Source: Illustration

A drawing of slaves operating a cotton gin published in Harper's Weekly in 1869.

主要来源：插图

1869 年在哈珀周刊上发行的一张棉花棉花奴隶绘画。

THE FIRST COTTON-GIN.—Drawn by William L. Sheppard.—[See Page 814.]

SLAVERY IN AMERICA IN THE 1800S

Slave life varied greatly across America depending on many factors.

Life on the fields meant working sunup to sundown six days a week and having food sometimes not suitable for an animal to eat. Plantation slaves lived in small shacks with a dirt floor and little or no furniture. Life on large plantations with a cruel overseer was oftentimes the worst. However, work for a small farm owner who was not doing well could mean not being fed.

The stories about cruel overseers were certainly true in some cases. The **overseer** was paid to get the most work out of the slaves; therefore, overseers often resorted to whatever means were necessary. Sometimes the slaves would drive the overseer off the plantation in desperation. When slaves complained that they were being unfairly treated, slaveholders would most often be very protective of their "property" and would release the overseer.

In some cases, a driver was used rather than an overseer. The difference between the overseer and the **driver** was simple: drivers were slaves themselves. A driver might be convinced by a master to manage the slaves for better privileges. Drivers were usually hated by the rest of the slaves and these feelings often led to violence.

Large plantations usually required some slaves to work in the plantation home. These slaves enjoyed far better circumstances. **House slaves** lived in better quarters and received better food. They sometimes were able to travel with the owner's family. In many cases, a class system developed within the slave community. Domestic slaves did not often associate themselves with other slaves on the plantation, especially the **field hands**. They often aspired to arrange courtships for their children with other domestic slaves.

As the Peculiar Institution spread across the South, many states passed **slave codes**, which outlined the rights of slaves and the acceptable treatment and rules regarding slaves. Slave codes varied from state to state, but there were common threads. For example, one could not do business with a slave without the prior consent of the owner. Slaves could be awarded as prizes in raffles, wagered in gambling, offered as security for loans, and transferred as gifts from one person to another.

A slave was not permitted to keep a gun. If caught carrying a gun, the slave received 39 lashes and forfeited the gun. Blacks were held incompetent as witnesses in legal cases involving whites. The education of slaves was prohibited. Anyone operating a school or teaching reading and writing to any African-American in Missouri could be punished by a

在美国在 1800S

根据许多因素，美国的奴隶生活差异很大。

田野上的生活意味着每周六天工作日照，食物有时不适合动物吃饭。种植园奴隶住在小地板上，土地很少或没有家具。残酷监督的大型种植园的生活经常是最糟糕的。然而，一个没有做得好的小农业主的工作可能意味着没有被喂养。

在某些情况下，关于残酷监督者的故事也是如此。监督员是为了从奴隶中获得最多的工作而付出的;因此，监督员经常采取任何必要的手段。有时，奴隶会驱使监督人员离开种植园绝望。当奴隶抱怨他们受到不公平待遇时，奴隶主通常会非常保护他们的"财产"，并释放监督人员。

在某些情况下，使用司机而不是监督员。监督者和司机之间的区别很简单：司机是自己的奴隶。司机可能会相信主人能够管理奴隶以获得更好的特权。司机通常被其他奴隶憎恨，而这些感觉常常导致暴力。

大型种植园通常需要一些奴隶在种植园内工作。这些奴隶享有更好的情况。家里的奴隶生活在更好的地方，并得到更好的食物。他们有时能够和业主的家人一起旅行。在许多情况下，在奴隶社区内开发的一个班级制度。家庭奴隶并不经常与种植园的其他奴隶，特别是现场的手合作。他们常常渴望为其他家庭奴隶的孩子安排求爱。

由于特殊机构遍布南部，许多州通过了奴隶制度，其中概述了奴隶的权利和对奴隶的可接受的待遇和规定。奴隶代码从国家到国家不同，但有共同的线索。例如，不经业主事先同意，不能与奴隶做生意。奴隶可以被授予抽奖奖品，赌博赌注，作为贷款担保，并作为礼物从一个人转移到另一个人。

一名奴隶不准枪口。如果抓到一把枪，奴隶收到 39 鞭子，没收枪。黑人在涉及白人的法律案件中被认为是无能的证人。奴隶受教育是禁止的。任何经营学校或在密苏里州任何非裔美国人阅读和写作的人都可以处以不低于 500 美

fine of not less than $500 and up to six months in jail. Slaves could not assemble without a white person present. Marriages between slaves were not considered legally binding. Therefore, owners were free to split up families through sale.

Any slave found guilty of arson, rape of a white woman, or conspiracy to rebel was put to death. However, since the slave woman was **chattel**, a white man who raped her was guilty only of a trespass on the master's property. Rape was common on the plantation, and very few cases were ever reported.   Light-skinned slaves – those whose parents or grandparents were White – were common, although they were always considered Black, no matter how close they might look like their fathers. Even Thomas Jefferson fathered children with one of his slaves.

元的罚款，最多 6 个月的监禁。如果没有白人出席，奴隶无法组合。奴隶之间的婚姻并不被视为具有法律约束力。因此，业主可以通过销售自由分拆家庭。

任何被判有罪的纵火罪，一名白人女子强奸或串谋反叛的奴隶被判死刑。然而，由于奴隶女性是动产，一个强奸她的白人只对主人的财产进行了侵犯。强奸在种植园很普遍，很少有病例报道过。光老奴隶－那些父母或祖父母是白人的奴隶－是常见的，尽管他们总是被认为是黑人，不管他们看起来像他们的父亲有多近。即使是托马斯·杰斐逊，也是他的奴隶之一。

Primary Source: Photograph

A photograph of a family of slaves working the cotton fields in the 1850s.

主要来源：照片

19 世纪 50 年代在棉田工作的奴隶家庭照片。

SLAVE REVOLTS

Starting as early as 1663, slaves were organizing revolts to regain their freedom. Hundreds of minor uprisings occurred on American plantations during the two and a half centuries of slavery. Most of the uprisings were small in scope and were put down easily. Some were larger in ambition and sent a chill down the spines of countless Southern planters. Two of the most famous revolts were in the early Nineteenth Century. One was led by Denmark Vesey and the other was led by Nat Turner.

Denmark Vesey earned his freedom by winning a lottery and purchasing his freedom. He worked as a carpenter in South Carolina as a respected artisan for years and was quite satisfied with his life. He was an educated man, fluent in several languages, which he learned

奴隶革命

从 1663 年开始，奴隶组织起义重新获得自由。在两个半世纪的奴隶制中，美国种植园发生了数百次轻微起义。大部分起义范围很小，容易被放下。有些人的野心较大，并向南方种植无数的种子发出了寒意。最着名的两场反抗是十九世纪初。一个由丹麦 Vesey 领导，另一个由 Nat Turner 领导。

丹麦 Vesey 赢得了自由，赢得了彩票并购买了自由。他在南卡罗来纳州担任木匠，作为一个受人尊敬的工匠多年，对他的生活很满意。他是一个受过良好教育的人，流利的语言，他学

while he was enslaved to a widely traveled slave trader. But a profound repulsion to slavery, plus encouragement from the successful slave revolt in **Haiti** led him to plan to murder every white in the South, with the help of thousands of slaves and supporters. The date was set for Sunday, July 24, 1822. Before the uprising began, his plan was revealed and he was captured, tried, and hanged. Forty-seven African-Americans were condemned to death for alleged involvement in the plot. An estimated 9,000 individuals were involved.

Nat Turner was somewhat of a mystic. He frequently was said to have religious visions, and he claimed at times to have spoken with God. In 1831, Turner claimed to be responding to one of these visions and organized as many as 70 slaves who went from plantation to plantation and murdered about 75 men, women and children. As they continued on their rampage they gathered additional supporters but when their ammunition was exhausted, they were captured. Turner and about 18 of his supporters were hanged. This was even more shocking than any previous uprising. Turner had done what others had not. He actually succeeded in killing a large number of white Southerners. The South responded by increasing slave patrols and tightening their ever more repressive slave codes.

Rebellion would often find voice in less dramatic ways and more personal ways. The slave codes bear witness to the growing fear of slave insurrection and revolt. Slaves ran away in droves, escaping to freedom in Canada and the Northern states. They fled to the Indians and joined them in their wars against the white settlers. Some accounts tell of slaves poisoning their masters and mistresses. Some slaves banded together and stopped working, while others deliberately slowed down their pace. The history of slave resistance and revolts is the story of the desperate and sometimes successful attempt of people to preserve their sense of dignity, humanity and to preserve their culture, and gain their liberty in the face of systematic repression and bondage.

THE WHITE POOR

The "Plain Folk of the Old South" were white subsistence farmers who occupied a social rung between rich planters and poor whites in the Southern United States before the Civil War. These farmers tended to settle in backcountry, and most of them were **Scotch-Irish** American and English American or a mixture thereof. They owned land, generally did not raise commodity crops, and owned few or no slaves. Jeffersonian and Jacksonian Democrats preferred to refer to these farmers as "yeomen" because the term emphasized an independent political spirit and economic self-reliance.

到了，而他被奴役到一个广泛旅行的奴隶商。但对奴隶制的深刻反对，加上海地成功的奴隶叛乱的鼓励，导致他计划在数千名奴隶和支持者的帮助下谋杀南方的每一个白人。日期定于1822年7月24日星期日。起义开始之前，他的计划被揭露，被捕，试图绞死。涉嫌参与阴谋，有47名非裔美国人被谴责死亡。估计有9000人涉及。

纳特特纳有点神秘。他经常被认为有宗教信仰，他有时声称与上帝说话。 1831年，特纳声称对这些愿景作出了回应，并组织了多达七十名从种植园到种植园的奴隶，并谋杀了约75名男子，妇女和儿童。随着他们继续猖獗，他们收集了更多的支持者，但是当他们的弹药耗尽时，他们被捕获。特纳和约18名支持者被绞死。这比以前的起义更令人震惊。特纳已经做了别人没有的事情。他实际上成功地杀死了大量的白人南方人。南方响应了越来越多的奴隶巡逻，并收紧了更加镇压的奴隶守法。

反叛经常会以不那么戏剧性的方式和更个人的方式发出声音。奴隶制度证明越来越多的恐惧奴隶起义和反抗。奴隶逃跑，逃到加拿大和北部各州的自由。他们逃到了印度人身上，并与他们一起参加了与白人定居者的战争。有些帐户告诉奴隶中毒他们的主人和情妇。一些奴隶组合在一起，停止工作，而其他奴隶则故意放慢脚步。奴隶抵抗和反抗的历史是人们为了保持他们的尊严，人性和维护文化，在有系统的镇压和束缚中获得自由的绝望而有时成功的尝试的故事。

白色不好

"南方平原民俗"是白内禀的农民，他们在内战前在美国南部占领了富裕的种植者和贫穷的白人之间的社会阶层。这些农民往往定居在乡村，其中大部分是苏格兰爱尔兰裔美国人和英国美国人，或者混合在一起。他们拥有土地，一般没有种植商品作物，拥有很少或没有奴隶。杰斐逊和杰克逊主义民主党人倾向于把这些农民称为"岳母"，因为这个词强调了独立的政治精神和经济自力更生。

Historians have long debated how large this group was and how much influence its members exerted on Southern politics in the **Antebellum Period**, particularly why and to what extent these farmers were willing to support secession despite their typically not being slaveholders themselves. Frederick Law Olmsted (a Northerner who traveled throughout and wrote about the 1850s South) and historians such as William E. Dodd and Ulrich B. Phillips considered common Southerners as minor players in Southern antebellum social, economic, and political life. Twentieth-century romantic portrayals of the Antebellum South, especially Margaret Mitchell's novel Gone with the Wind and the 1939 film adaptation, mostly ignored the role yeomen played. The nostalgic view of the South that emerged in the 20th Century emphasized the elite planter class of wealth and refinement who controlled large plantations and numerous slaves.

The major challenge to the view of planter dominance came from historian Frank Lawrence Owsley's book, Plain Folk of the Old South (1949). His work ignited a long historiographical debate. Owsley argued that yeoman farmers played a significant role in Southern society during this era rather than being sidelined by a dominant aristocratic planter class. The religion, language, and culture of these common people comprised a democratic "Plain Folk" society. Critics say Owsley overemphasized the size of the Southern landholding middle class and overlooked a large class of poor whites who owned neither land nor slaves. Owsley believed that shared economic interests united Southern farmers; critics suggest the vast difference in economic classes between the elite and subsistence farmers meant they did not have the same values or outlook.

In his study of Edgefield County, South Carolina, historian Orville Vernon Burton classified white society into the poor, the yeoman middle class, and the elite. A clear line demarcated the elite, but according to Burton, the line between poor and yeoman was less distinct. Another historian, Stephanie McCurry argued that yeomen were clearly distinguished from poor whites by their ownership of real property, that is, land. Yeomen were "self-working farmers," distinct from the elite because they physically labored on their land alongside any slaves they owned. Planters with numerous slaves had work that was essentially managerial, and often they supervised an overseer rather than the slaves themselves.

Nevertheless, the very presence of slaves throughout the American South fostered white unity despite economic disparities. In a speech

历史学家长期以来一直争论这个群体多大，以及其成员对 Antebellum 时期对南方政治的影响，特别是为什么以及在多大程度上这些农民愿意支持分裂，尽管他们一般不是奴隶主自己。弗雷德里克·奥尔斯特德（Frederick Law Olmsted）（一名北方人，曾经写过关于 1850 年代南方的南方人物），历史学家威廉·多德（William E. Dodd）和乌尔里奇·菲利普斯（Ulrich B. Phillips）认为，普通的南方人是南方前辈社会，经济和政治生活中的小角色。Antebellum South 的二十世纪浪漫写照，尤其是玛格丽特·米切尔（Margaret Mitchell）的小说"风之风"和 1939 年的电影改编，大部分都忽略了你们所扮演的角色。 20 世纪出现的南方怀旧观，强调了控制大型种植园和许多奴隶的精英种植者财富和精品。

对种植者优势观点的主要挑战来自历史学家弗兰克劳伦斯·奥斯利（Frank Lawrence Owsley）的"南方平原民俗"（1949）。他的工作点燃了漫长的历史辩论。奥斯利认为，农民在这个时代在南方社会中扮演着重要的角色，而不是被一个占统治地位的贵族种植者阶级所排斥。这些普通民众的宗教，语言和文化包括民主的"平民俗"社会。评论家说，奥斯利过份强调了南方中等收入阶层的规模，忽视了一大批贫穷的白人，他们既不拥有土地也不拥有奴隶。奥斯利认为，共同的经济利益使南方农民联合起来;批评者认为，精英与自给农民之间的经济阶层的巨大差异意味着他们没有相同的价值观或前景。

在他对南卡罗来纳州边角县的研究中，历史学家奥维尔·弗农伯顿将白社会归为穷人，中产阶级和精英阶层。一个明确的界线划分了精英阶层，但是根据伯顿的说法，穷人和仆人之间的界线不那么明显。另一位历史学家斯蒂芬妮·麦考里（Stephanie McCurry）认为，由于对房地产的所有权，也就是土地，你们与穷人的白人明显不同。 Yeomen 是"自雇农民"，与精英不同，因为他们在他们所有的奴隶身上劳累了自己的土地。有许多奴隶的种植者的工作本质上是管理的，他们经常监督监督员，而不是奴隶本身。

然而，尽管经济差距，整个美国南部的奴隶的存在促成了白人团结。在 1858 年美国参议院发

before the U.S. Senate in 1858, South Carolina senator and planter, James Henry Hammond, demonstrated this logic by arguing that slaves comprised, "the very mud-sill of society," or a bottom supportive layer to a class system delineated across racial lines.

Though Southern society was dominated by a planter elite, "Plain Folk" supported secession to defend their families, homes, notions of liberty, and beliefs in racial hierarchies. Historians argue that a distinctive Southern political ideology blended localism, white supremacy, and Jeffersonian ideas of agrarian republicanism.

FREEMEN

When Americans think of African-Americans in the **Deep South** before the Civil War, the first image that invariably comes to mind is one of slavery. However, many African-Americans were able to secure their freedom and live in a state of semi-freedom even before slavery was abolished by war. **Free Blacks** lived in all parts of the United States, but the majority lived amid slavery in the American South. It is estimated that by 1860 there were about 1.5 million free blacks in the Southern states.

How did African-Americans become free? Some slaves bought their own freedom from their owners, but this process became more and more rare as the 1800s progressed. Many slaves became free through **manumission**, the voluntary **emancipation** of a slave by a slave owner. Manumission was sometimes offered because slaves had outlived their usefulness or were held in special favor by their masters. The offspring of interracial relations were often set free. Some slaves were set free by their masters as the abolitionist movement grew. Occasionally slaves were freed during the master's lifetime, and more often through the master's will. Many African-Americans freed themselves through escape. A few Americans of African descent came to the United States as immigrants, especially common in the New Orleans area.

Were free blacks offered the same rights as free whites? The answer is quite simply no. For example, a Virginia law, passed in the early 1830s, prohibited the teaching of all blacks to read or write. Free blacks throughout the South were banned from possessing firearms, or preaching the Bible. Later laws even prohibited Negroes who went out of state to get an education from returning. In many states, the slave codes that were designed to keep African-Americans in bondage were also applied to free persons of color. Most horrifically, free blacks could not testify in court. If a slave catcher claimed that a free African-American was a slave, the accused could not defend himself in court.

The church often played a central role in the community of free blacks. The establishment of the **African Methodist Episcopal Church**

表的演讲中，南卡罗林纳州参议员和种植者詹姆斯·亨利·哈蒙德（James Henry Hammond）通过争辩说，奴隶包括"社会的泥泞"，或者描绘为跨越式的阶级制度的底层支持层种族线。

虽然南方社会由种植者精英主宰，但"平民民主"支持分裂国家维护自己的家庭，家园，自由观念和种族层面的信仰。历史学家认为，南方政治意识形态与地方主义，白人至上，杰斐逊主义农民共和主义思想相融合。

自由人

当美国人在南北战争之前想到深南的非洲裔美国人时，首先想到的第一个形象就是奴隶制。然而，许多非洲裔美国人即使在奴役被战争废除之前也能够获得自由，生活在半自由的状态。免费黑人住在美国各地，但大多数人生活在美国南部的奴隶制之下。据估计，到 1860 年，南方各国约有 150 万自由黑人。

非裔美国人怎么变得自由？一些奴隶从自己的业主那里买下自己的自由，但随着十九世纪的进步，这个过程变得越来越少见了。许多奴隶通过强制自由，奴隶主自愿解放奴隶。有时候提供人力资源，因为奴隶已经超出了他们的有用性，或被他们的主人特别赞成。种族间关系的后代通常是自由的。随着废奴运动的增加，一些奴隶由他们的主人释放。在大师的一生中，偶尔奴隶被释放，更经常地通过主人的意志。许多非洲裔美国人通过逃跑释放自己。一些非洲裔美国人作为移民来到美国，在新奥尔良地区特别常见。

自由黑人是否享有与免费白人相同的权利？答案很简单。例如，在 20 世纪 30 年代初通过的弗吉尼亚州法律禁止所有黑人的教学阅读或写作。整个南部的黑人都被禁止拥有枪支或传讲圣经。后来的法律甚至禁止出国的黑人得到退学教育。在许多州，旨在使非裔美国人处于束缚状态的奴隶制度也适用于自由的色彩。最可怕的是，自由的黑人不能在法庭上作证。如果一个奴隶捕手声称一个自由的非裔美国人是一个奴隶，被告不能在法庭上自卫。

教会经常在自由黑社会中发挥核心作用。非洲卫理公会教会的建立是一个重要的转变。它是

represents an important shift. It was established with black leadership and spread from Philadelphia to Charleston and to many other areas in the South, despite laws which forbade blacks from preaching. The church suffered brutalities and massive arrests of its membership, clearly an indication of the fear of black solidarity. Many of these leaders became diehard abolitionists.

Free blacks were highly skilled as artisans, business people, educators, writers, planters, musicians, tailors, hairdressers, and cooks. African-American inventors like Thomas Jennings, who invented a method for the dry cleaning of clothes, and Henry Blair Glenn Ross, who patented a seed planter, contributed to the advancement of science. Some owned property and kept boarding houses, and some even owned slaves themselves. Prominent among free persons of color of the period are Frederick Douglass, Richard Allen, Absalom Jones, and Harriet Tubman.

ABOLITION

As the cotton industry took hold and slavery became more and more entrenched across the American South, the opposition to the Peculiar Institution began to grow.

The first widely accepted solution to the slavery question in the 1820s was put forward by the **American Colonization Society**. In effect, supporters of colonization wanted to transplant the slave population back to Africa. Their philosophy was simple: slaves were brought to America involuntarily. Why not give them a chance to enjoy life as though such a forced migration had never taken place? Funds were raised to transport freed African-Americans across the Atlantic in the opposite direction. The nation of **Liberia** was created as a haven for former American slaves.

But most African-Americans opposed this practice. The vast majority had never set foot on African soil. Many African-Americans rightly believed that they had helped build this country and deserved to live as free citizens of America. By the end of the decade, a full-blown Abolitionist movement was born.

These new **abolitionists** were different from their forebears. Anti-slavery societies had existed in America since 1775, but these activists were more radical. Early Abolitionists called for a gradual end to slavery. They supported compensation to owners of slaves for their loss of property. They raised money for the purchase of slaves to grant freedom to selected individuals.

The new Abolitionists thought differently. They saw slavery as a blight on America. It must be brought to an end immediately and without

黑色领导成立的，并从费城传播到查尔斯顿和南部许多其他地区，尽管禁止黑人传播的法律。教会遭受暴力和大规模的逮捕，显然是黑社会的恐惧迹象。这些领导人中有许多人成为顽固的废奴主义者。

自由黑人技术精湛，如工匠，商界人士，教育家，作家，种植者，音乐家，裁缝，理发师和厨师。非洲裔美国人发明家 Thomas Jennings 发明了一种干洗衣服的方法，以及为种子种植者获得专利的亨利·布莱尔·格伦·罗斯（Henry Blair Glenn Ross），为科学的进步做出了贡献。一些拥有的财产和寄宿的房子，有的甚至拥有自己的奴隶。这个时期的自由人之间的突出表现是 Frederick Douglass，Richard Allen，Absalom Jones 和 Harriet Tubman。

废除

随着棉花行业的持股和奴隶制在美国南部变得越来越多，独特机构的反对态度开始增长。

美国殖民化社会提出了 20 世纪 20 年代第一个广泛接受的奴隶制问题解决方案。实际上，殖民地的支持者想将奴隶人移植回非洲。他们的理念很简单：奴隶被非法地带到美国。为什么不给他们一个享受生活的机会，好像这种强迫迁移从未发生过？筹集资金，将大西洋沿岸的非洲裔美国人运往相反的方向。利比里亚国家被创造为前美国奴隶的避风港。

但大多数非裔美国人反对这种做法。绝大多数人从未踏上非洲土地。许多非洲裔美国人正确地认为，他们帮助建立这个国家，值得拥有美国的自由公民的生活。到十年底，一个全面的废除奴隶主义运动就诞生了。

这些新的废奴者与他们的祖先不同。自 1775 年以来，反奴隶制社会已经存在于美国，但这些活动分子更为激进。早期的废奴主义者呼吁逐步结束奴隶制。他们支持奴隶主对他们的财产损失给予赔偿。他们为购买奴隶募集资金，为选定的个人提供自由。

新的废奴主义者思想不同。他们看到奴隶制是美国的一种疾病。必须立即结束，不向业主赔

compensation to the owners. They sent petitions to Congress and the states, campaigned for office, and flooded the South with inflammatory literature.

Needless to say, eyebrows were raised throughout the North and the South. Soon the battle lines were drawn. President Andrew Jackson banned the post office from delivering Abolitionist literature in the South. A **gag rule** was passed on the floor of the House of Representatives forbidding the discussion of bills that restricted slavery. Abolitionists were physically attacked because of their outspoken anti-slavery views. While northern churches rallied to the abolitionist cause, the churches of the South used the Bible to defend slavery.

Abolitionists were always a minority, even on the eve of the Civil War. Their dogged determination to end human bondage was a struggle that persisted for decades. While mostly peaceful at first, as each side became more and more firmly rooted, pens were exchanged for swords. Another seed of sectional conflict had been deeply planted.

THE VOICES OF ABOLITION

Every movement needs a voice. For the entire generation of people that grew up in the years that led to the Civil War, **William Lloyd Garrison** was the voice of Abolitionism. Originally a supporter of colonization, Garrison changed his position and became the leader of the emerging anti-slavery movement. His publication, **The Liberator**, reached thousands of individuals worldwide. His ceaseless, uncompromising position on the moral outrage that was slavery made him loved and hated by many Americans.

In 1831, Garrison published the first edition of The Liberator. His words, "I am in earnest — I will not equivocate — I will not excuse — I will not retreat a single inch — and I will be heard," clarified the position of the New Abolitionists. Garrison was not interested in compromise. He founded the **New England Anti-Slavery Society** the following year. In 1833, he met with delegates from around the nation to form the American Anti-Slavery Society. Garrison saw his cause as worldwide. With the aid of his supporters, he traveled overseas to garner support from Europeans. He was, indeed, a global crusader. But Garrison needed a lot of help. The Liberator would not have been successful had it not been for the free blacks who subscribed. Approximately seventy-five percent of the readers were free African-Americans.

Garrison saw moral persuasion as the only means to end slavery. To him the task was simple: show people how immoral slavery was and they would join in the campaign to end it. He disdained politics, for he saw the political world as an arena of compromise. A group split from

偿。他们向国会和各州发出请愿，上台，并用炎性文学淹没了南方。

不用说，整个北部和南部都有眉毛。战线很快就被画了。安德鲁·杰克逊总统禁止邮局在南方提供废奴文学。众议院的地板上通过了一项规则，禁止讨论限制奴隶制的法案。废除死刑的人因为直言不讳的反奴隶制观点而受到身体的攻击。北方教会在废除奴隶制事业的同时，南方的教会用圣经来捍卫奴隶制。

即使在内战前夕，废除奴隶者总是少数人。他们决定结束人类奴役的坚定决心是持续数十年的斗争。首先大多是和平的，随着每一方越来越牢固扎根，笔被交换成剑。部分冲突的另一种种子已经深入种植。

拒绝的声音

每个动作都需要一个声音。对于在导致内战的那些年代长大的整个一代人，威廉·劳埃德·加里森是废除主义的声音。原本是殖民地的支持者，驻军改变了立场，成为正在出现的反奴役运动的领导人。他的出版物"解放者"在全球达到了数千人。他对奴隶制的道义上的愤慨持续不屈不挠的立场让他受到许多美国人的喜爱和憎恨。

1831 年，驻军出版了"解放者"第一版。他的话说："我很认真 - 我不会模棱两可的 - 我不会原谅 - 我不会退缩一寸，我会听到的，"澄清了新废除党派的立场。驻军对妥协不感兴趣。他在第二年创立了新英格兰反奴隶制学会。 1833 年，他会见了来自全国各地的代表组成了美国反奴隶制学会。驻军在全球范围内看到了他的事业。在他的支持者的帮助下，他前往海外获得欧洲人的支持。他确实是一个全球十字军。但驻军需要很多帮助。如果没有自由的黑人订阅，解放者就不会成功。大约百分之七十五的读者是非裔美国人。

驻军看到道德劝说是结束奴隶制的唯一手段。对他来说，这个任务很简单：向人们展示如何不道德的奴隶制，他们将参加运动结束。他蔑视政治，因为他认为政治世界是一个妥协的舞

Garrison in the 1840s to run candidates for president on the **Liberty Party** ticket. Garrison was not dismayed. Once in Boston, he was dragged through the streets and nearly killed. A bounty of $4000 was placed on his head. In 1854, he publicly burned a copy of the Constitution because it permitted slavery. He called for the North to secede from the Union to sever the ties with the slaveholding South.

While Garrison may have been the most well-known abolitionist, abolition of slavery was the single most important cause of free African-Americans.

Once the colonization effort was defeated, free African Americans in the North became more active in the fight against slavery. They worked with white abolitionists like William Lloyd Garrison and **Wendell Philips** to spread the word. They developed publications and contributed money. Many, such as **Robert Purvis**, dedicated their lives to freeing individual slaves from bondage. Although many pledged their lives to the cause, three African-American abolitionists surpassed others in impact. They were David Walker, Frederick Douglass, and Sojourner Truth.

While Garrison is considered the prime organizer of the abolitionist movement, David Walker published his **Appeal** two years before The Liberator. In 1829, Walker declared slavery a malignancy, calling for its immediate termination. He cited the four evils causing the greatest harm to African Americans as slavery, ignorance, Christianity, and colonization. Even white abolitionists decried the violent nature of his text. In the South, an award was raised for his capture, and nine months after publishing his Appeal he died mysteriously. Walker originated radical abolitionism.

台。一群从 19 世纪 40 年代的驻军开始，在自由党机票上担任总统候选人。驻军并不感到沮丧。曾经在波士顿，他被拖到街上，几乎死了。他的头上放了一笔 4000 美元的赏金。1854 年，他公开烧了宪法的副本，因为它允许奴隶制。他呼吁北方脱离联盟，切断与奴隶派南方的关系。

虽然驻军可能是最着名的废奴者，但废除奴隶制是唯一最重要的自由非裔美国人的事业。

一旦殖民化的努力被打败，北美的自由非裔美国人越来越积极地反对奴隶制。他们与像 William Lloyd Garrison 和 Wendell Philips 这样的白人废除主义者一起工作。他们开发了出版物，贡献了钱。许多人，如罗伯特·普维斯（Robert Purvis），致力于释放奴隶的奴隶。虽然许多人为了这个事业而作出承诺，但是三名非裔美国人的废奴者在影响力方面超过了其他人。他们是 David Walker，Frederick Douglass 和 Sojourner Truth。

当驻军被认为是废除死刑运动的主要组织者时，大卫·沃克（David Walker）在解放者两年前发表了上诉。 1829 年，沃克宣布奴隶制恶性肿瘤，要求立即终止。他引用了对非裔美国人造成最大伤害的四种罪恶，即奴隶制，无知，基督教和殖民化。即使是白人废除死刑的人也谴责了他的文本的暴力性质。在南方，他获得了一个奖，并在出版上诉九个月后，他神秘地死了。沃克起源于激进的废除主义。
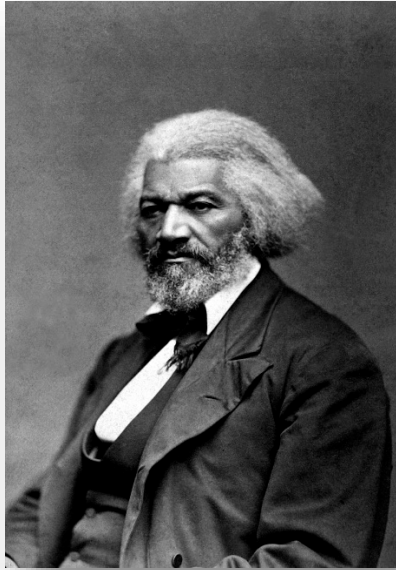
Primary Source: Photograph

A photograph of Frederick Douglass late in his life. He was well known for his sharp intellect and piercing gaze.

主要来源：照片

他的一生的弗雷德里克·道格拉斯的照片。他以尖锐的智力和刺激的目光而闻名。

The best known African American abolitionist was **Frederick Douglass**. Douglass escaped from slavery when he was 21 and moved to Massachusetts. As a former house servant, Douglass was able to read and write. In 1841, he began to speak to crowds about what it was like to be enslaved. His talents as an orator and writer led people to question whether or not he had actually been born a slave.

All this attention put him at great risk. Fearful that his master would claim him and return him to bondage, Douglass went to England, where he continued to fight for the cause. A group of abolitionists eventually bought his freedom and he was allowed to return to the United States. He began publishing an anti-slavery newspaper known as the **North Star**. Douglass served as an example to all who doubted the ability of African Americans to function as free citizens.

Sojourner Truth was born into slavery in New York, but was freed when the state outlawed the practice in 1827. She was born Isabella Baumfree, but changed her name because she believed God wanted her to travel about the country and spread the word. Truth was one of the best known abolitionists, renowned for her stirring oratory. Also concerned with women's rights, she joined the campaign for female suffrage. When slavery was ended, she continued to fight for equality by protesting segregation laws.

Speeches and Garrison's Liberator were important, but it was a novel that captured the collective conscience of the North.

最着名的非裔美国人废除死刑犯是弗雷德里克·道格拉斯。道格拉斯 21 岁时逃离奴隶制，搬到马萨诸塞州。作为一名前仆人，Douglass 能够读写。 1841 年，他开始向人群说出被奴役的想法。他作为演说家和作家的才能使人们怀疑他是否真的是一个奴隶。

所有这些关注使他面临很大的风险。担心他的主人会要求他回到他的束缚，Douglass 去英国，在那里他继续为这个事业而战。一批废除死刑的人终于买下了自由，被允许返回美国。他开始出版一个被称为北极星的反奴隶制报纸。道格拉斯为所有怀疑非裔美国人作为自由公民发挥作用的人提供了榜样。

Sojourner 真理诞生于纽约的奴隶制，但是当国家在 1827 年取缔了这种做法时，他就被释放了。她出生于伊莎贝拉·鲍姆弗里（Isabella Baumfree），但改变了她的名字，因为她相信上帝要她去国外旅行。真理是最着名的废除死刑的人之一，以她的煽动性而着称。她也关心妇女的权利，她参加了女性选举的运动。当奴隶制结束时，她继续争取平等，抗议隔离法。

讲话和驻军解放者是重要的，但这是一部小说，捕捉到北方的集体良知。

"So you're the little woman who wrote the book that made this great war." This was Abraham Lincoln's reported greeting to **Harriet Beecher Stowe** when he met her ten years after her book **Uncle Tom's Cabin** was published. Although the President may have been exaggerating a bit, few novels in American history have grabbed the public spotlight and caused as great an uproar as Uncle Tom's Cabin.

"所以你是写这本伟大战争的书的小女人。"这是亚伯拉罕·林肯在哈里特·贝切·斯托（Harriet Beecher Stowe）遇到她的书叔叔叔叔叔叔出版十年之后的一个报道。虽然总统可能夸张一点，但美国历史上少有的小说吸引了大众的焦点，并引起了与汤姆叔叔的小屋一样喧闹。

Primary Source: Illustration

A full page illustration by Hammatt Billings for Uncle Tom's Cabin in 1852. The sympathetic characters applied to many in the North who began supporting abolition after reading the novel.

主要来源：插图

1852 年，汤姆叔叔叔叔哈马特·比林斯（Hammatt Billings）的全页插图。北方许多人在阅读小说后开始支持废除的同情人物。

Eliza comes to tell Uncle Tom that he is sold and that she is running away to save her child.   Page 62.

Across the North, readers became acutely aware of the horrors of slavery on a far more personal level than ever before. In the South the book was met with outrage and branded an irresponsible book of distortions and overstatements. In such an explosive environment, her story greatly furthered the Abolitionist cause north of the Mason-Dixon Line and promoted sheer indignation in plantation America.

Harriet Beecher Stowe was born into a prominent family of preachers. Her father, Lyman Beecher, was one of the most renowned ministers in his generation. Her brother **Henry Ward Beecher** was already an outspoken Abolitionist, and by the mid-1850s would become the driving force behind aiding the free-soil cause in "Bleeding Kansas.**"** While living for a short while in Cincinnati, Stowe became exposed to actual runaway slaves. Her heart ached at the wretched tales she heard. She began to write a series of short stories depicting the plight of plantation slaves.

在北方，读者更加清楚地知道奴隶制的恐怖程度远远超过以往任何时候。在南方，这本书遭到愤慨，并且引用了一本不负责任的歪曲和夸张的书。在这样一个爆炸性的环境中，她的故事大大进一步延续了梅森 - 迪克森线以北的废除主义事业，并促成了美国种植园的纯粹愤慨。

哈里特·贝切尔·斯托（Harriet Beecher Stowe）出生于一个着名的传道家庭。她的父亲莱曼·贝切（Lyman Beecher）是他这一代最有名的部长之一。她的兄弟亨利·沃德·贝切尔（Henry Ward Beecher）已经是一个直言不讳的废除党派人士，到了 20 世纪 50 年代中期，他将成为帮助"堪萨斯州流血"自由土地事业的驱动力。在辛辛那提生活了一段时间后，斯托受到实际的失控她的心脏对她所听到的可怜的故事感到痛苦，她开始写出一系列描绘种植奴隶困境的短篇故事。

Encouraged by her sister-in-law, Stowe decided to pen a novel. First published as a series in 1851, it first appeared as a book the following year. The heart-wrenching tale portrays slave families forced to cope with separation by masters through sale. Uncle Tom mourns for the family he was forced to leave. In one heroic scene, Eliza makes a daring dash across the frozen Ohio River to prevent the sale of her son by slave traders. The novel also takes the perspective that slavery brings out the worst in the white masters, leading them to perpetrate moral atrocities they would otherwise never commit.

The reaction was incredible. Uncle Tom's Cabin sold 300,000 copies in the North alone. The **Fugitive Slave Act**, passed in 1850, could hardly be enforced by any of Stowe's readers. Although banned in most of the South, it served as another log on the growing fire.

The book sold even more copies in Great Britain than in the United States. This had an immeasurable appeal in swaying British public opinion. Many members of the British Parliament relished the idea of a divided United States. Ten years after the publication of Uncle Tom's Cabin, the British people made it difficult for its government to support the Confederacy, even though there were strong economic ties to the South. In the end, Mr. Lincoln may not have been stretching the truth after all.

她的嫂子鼓励，斯托决定画一本小说。首先在 1851 年出版作为一个系列，它在第二年首次出现作为一本书。令人心痛的故事描绘了奴隶家庭被迫通过销售来应付主人分居。汤姆叔叔为家庭而哀悼，被迫离开。在一个英雄的场景中，伊丽莎一个大胆的冲刺横跨冻结的俄亥俄河，以防止奴隶贩卖她的儿子。这本小说也认为奴隶制在白人大师中是最糟糕的，导致他们实行他们从来没有犯过的道德暴行。

反应是不可思议的。汤姆叔叔的小屋只在北方卖了 30 万张。 1850 年通过的"逃犯奴隶法"很难被任何斯托的读者执行。尽管在南部大部分地区被禁止，但它也是日益增长的火灾的另一登录。

这本书在英国比在美国卖了更多的副本。这在英国舆论摇摆中有不可估量的吸引力。英国议会的许多成员赞成美国分裂的想法。英国人在汤姆叔叔小屋出版十年后，尽管与南方有着强有力的经济联系，但政府难以支持联邦。最后，林肯先生可能根本不会拉扯真相。

THE ARGUMENT FOR SLAVERY

Those who defended slavery rose to the challenge set forth by the Abolitionists. The defenders of slavery included economics, history, religion, legality, social good, and even humanitarianism, to further their arguments.

Defenders of slavery argued that the sudden end to the slave economy would have had a profound and killing economic impact in the South where reliance on slave labor was the foundation of their economy. The cotton economy would collapse. The tobacco crop would dry in the fields. Rice would cease being profitable.

Defenders of slavery argued that if all the slaves were freed, there would be widespread unemployment and chaos. This would lead to uprisings, bloodshed, and anarchy. They pointed to the mob's "rule of terror" during the French Revolution and argued for the continuation of the status quo, which was providing for affluence and stability for the slaveholding class and for all free people who enjoyed the bounty of the slave society.

Defenders of slavery argued that slavery had existed throughout history and was the natural state of mankind. The Greeks had slaves, the Romans had slaves, and the English had slavery until very recently.

Defenders of slavery noted that in the Bible, Abraham had slaves. They point to the Ten Commandments, noting that "Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house… nor his manservant, nor his maidservant." In the New Testament, Paul returned a runaway slave, Philemon, to his master, and, although slavery was widespread throughout the Roman world, Jesus never spoke out against it.

Defenders of slavery turned to the courts, who had ruled, with the Dred Scott Decision, that all blacks — not just slaves — had no legal standing as persons in our courts — they were property, and the Constitution protected slave-holders' rights to their property.

Defenders of slavery argued that the institution was divine, and that it brought Christianity to the heathen from across the ocean. Slavery was, according to this argument, a good thing for the enslaved. John C. Calhoun said, "Never before has the black race of Central Africa, from the dawn of history to the present day, attained a condition so civilized and so improved, not only physically, but morally and intellectually."

Defenders of slavery argued that by comparison with the poor of Europe and the workers in the northern states, that slaves were better cared for. They said that their owners would protect and assist them when they were sick and aged, unlike those who, once fired from their work, were left to fend helplessly for themselves.

奴隶理论

那些捍卫奴隶制的人就变成了废奴主义者所提出的挑战。奴隶制的捍卫者包括经济，历史，宗教，合法性，社会福利，甚至人道主义，以进一步论证。

奴隶制的维权者认为，奴隶经济的突然结束将对南方产生深远和杀伤的经济影响，南部依赖奴隶劳动是经济的基础。棉花经济将崩溃。烟草作物会在田间干涸。赖斯将不再有利可图。

奴隶制的维权者认为，如果所有奴隶都被释放，那么就会出现普遍的失业和混乱。这将导致起义，流血和无政府状态。他们在法国大革命时指出了暴徒的"恐怖统治"，并争辩说继续维持现状，为奴隶制阶级和享有奴隶制福利的自由人民提供了富裕和稳定。

奴隶制的维权者认为，奴隶制在整个历史上都存在，是人类的自然状态。希腊人有奴隶，罗马人有奴隶，英国人直到最近才有奴隶制。

奴隶制的捍卫者指出，在圣经中，亚伯拉罕有奴隶。他们指的是十诫，注意到"你不要羡慕邻居的房子，也不要羡慕他的仆人，也不是他的女仆"。在新约里，保罗将一个失控的奴隶腓利门归给他的主人，虽然罗马世界的奴隶制很普遍，但耶稣从来没有反对。

奴隶制的捍卫者转向与 Dred Scott 决定有关的法庭，所有黑人－不仅仅是奴隶－在我们的法庭上没有法律地位－他们是财产，宪法保护奴隶的权利他们的财产。

奴隶制的维权者认为，这个制度是神圣的，它将基督教带到了海洋中的异教徒身上。根据这个说法，奴隶制对奴隶来说是一件好事。约翰·卡尔霍恩（John C. Calhoun）说："从历史的黎明到今天，中非的黑人种族从来没有达到文明和改善的条件，不仅在身体上，而且在道德和智力上。

奴隶制的维权者认为，与欧洲的穷人和北方的工人相比，那些奴隶更好地被照顾。他们说，他们的老板在生病和老年时都会保护和协助他们，不像那些曾经从工作中被解雇的人，自己无缘无故地为自己而奋斗。

James Thornwell, a minister, wrote in 1860, "The parties in this conflict are not merely Abolitionists and slaveholders, they are Atheists, Socialists, Communists, Red Republicans, Jacobins on the one side and the friends of order and regulated freedom on the other."

When a society forms around any institution, as the South did around slavery, it will formulate a set of arguments to support it. The Southerners held ever firmer to their arguments as the political tensions in the country drew us ever closer to the Civil War.

THE UNDERGROUND RAILROAD

Those who argued for and against slavery were instrumental in shaping the way ordinary Americans felt about the Peculiar Institution. However, revolutionary change requires people of action — those who little by little chip away at the forces who stand in the way. Such were the "conductors" of the **Underground Railroad**. Not content to wait for laws to change or for slavery to implode itself, railroad activists helped individual fugitive slaves find the light of freedom.

The Underground Railroad operated at night. Slaves were moved from "station" to "station" by abolitionists. These "stations" were usually homes and churches — any safe place to rest and eat before continuing on the journey to freedom, as far away as Canada. Often whites would pretend to be the masters of the fugitives to avoid capture. Sometimes lighter skinned African Americans took this role. In one spectacular case, Henry "Box" Brown arranged for a friend to put him in a wooden box, where he had only a few biscuits and some water. His friend mailed him to the North, where bemused abolitionists received him in Philadelphia.

Most of the time, however, slaves crept northward on their own, looking for the signal that designated the next safe haven. This was indeed risky business, because slave catchers and sheriffs were constantly on the lookout. Over 3,200 people are known to have worked on the railroad between 1830 and the end of the Civil War. Many will remain forever anonymous.

Perhaps the most outstanding "conductor" of the Underground Railroad was **Harriet Tubman**. Born a slave herself, she began working on the railroad to free her family members. During the 1850s, Tubman made 19 separate trips into slave territory. She was terribly serious about her mission. Any slave who had second thoughts she threatened to shoot with the pistol she carried on her hip. By the end of the decade, she was responsible for freeing about 300 slaves. When the Civil War broke out, she used her knowledge from working the railroad to serve as a spy for the Union.

部长詹姆斯·索恩威尔（James Thornwell）在 1860 年写道：“这个冲突中的各方不仅仅是废奴和奴隶主，他们是无神论者，社会主义者，共产主义者，红色共和党人，一方的雅各宾，另一方的秩序和规则自由的朋友”。

当一个社会形成在任何一个机构的时候，就像南方在奴隶制中一样，它会制定一套支持它的论据。南方人因为这个国家的政治紧张局势使我们更加接近内战，坚持自己的观点。

地下铁路

争论和反对奴隶制的人有助于塑造普通美国人对特殊机构的看法。然而，革命性的变革要求人们采取行动－那些一点一点的人都在阻碍那些阻碍他们的力量。这就是地下铁路的“指挥”。不满足于等待法律改变或奴隶制破坏自己，铁路活动家帮助个人逃离奴隶找到自由之光。

地下铁路晚上营业。奴隶被废止者从“车站”移到“车站”。这些“车站”通常是家庭和教堂－任何安全的地方休息和吃饭，继续前往自由之旅，远离加拿大。通常，白人将假装成为逃犯的主人，以避免被捕。有时，较轻皮肤的非裔美国人有这个角色。在一个壮观的例子中，亨利“盒”布朗安排一个朋友把他放在一个木箱子里，他只有几个饼干和一些水。他的朋友寄给了北方，被困的废除死刑人员在费城接待了他。

但是，大多数时候，奴隶本身就向北爬，寻找指定下一个避风港的信号。这确实是冒险的事情，因为奴隶捕手和警长一直在监视。1830 年至内战结束之前，已有超过 3200 人在铁路上工作。许多人将永远是匿名的。

也许地下铁路最优秀的“指挥”是哈里特·图伯曼。自己出生在奴隶身上，她开始在铁路上工作，释放家人。在 20 世纪 50 年代，杜布曼进行了 19 次单独的旅行进入奴隶领土。她对她的使命非常认真。任何一个奴隶，有第二个想法，她威胁要用她手持臀部的手枪射击。到十年底，她负责释放约三百名奴隶。当内战爆发时，她用她的铁路知识作为联盟的间谍。

Needless to say, the Underground Railroad was not appreciated by the slave owners. Although they disliked abolitionist talk and literature, this was far worse. To them, this was a simple case of stolen property. When northern towns rallied around freed slaves and refused compensation, yet another brick was set into the foundation of Southern secession.

不用说，地下铁路不受奴隶主的赞赏。虽然他们不喜欢废奴主义的言论和文学，但是这更糟糕。对他们来说，这是一个简单的被盗财产。当北部城镇在被释放的奴隶面前聚集，并拒绝赔偿时，又有一块砖被打入了南方分离的基础。

Primary Source: Photograph

Harriet Tubman as she appeared in 1855 at the height of her work as a conductor on the Underground Railroad.

主要来源：照片

哈里特·图伯曼（Harriet Tubman），当她在地下铁路的指挥工作的高峰时，她出现在 155 岁。

CONCLUSION

Clearly slavery was a terribly divisive issue. The nation was growing wealthy off of the backbreaking labor of millions of slaves, but it was not a system that everyone, least of all African Americans were willing to accept. In fact, violent opposition to slavery was nothing new when the Civil War erupted in 1860. African Americans as well as Whites had been fighting to end it for years.

So, did slavery cause the Civil War?

结论

明显的奴隶制是一个非常分裂的问题。 这个国家正在越来越多的富裕的数百万奴隶的破坏性劳动，但这不是一个系统，每个人，最少的所有非洲裔美国人愿意接受。 事实上，当内战在 1860 年爆发时，暴力反对奴隶制并不是什么新鲜事。非裔美国人以及白人一直在争取结束多年。

那么奴隶制是否导致内战呢？

PEOPLE AND GROUPS

Abolitionist: A person who worked to end slavery.

African Methodist Episcopal Church: Usually called the A.M.E. Church, it is the first independent Protestant denomination founded by African Americans.

American Colonization Society: An organization set up by abolitionists who raised money to send freed slaves to Liberia in Africa.

David Walker: African American abolitionist and publisher of "Appeal," a major newspaper promoting abolition.

Denmark Vesey: A literate, skilled carpenter and leader among free African Americans in Charleston, South Carolina. He was accused of being the ringleader of "the rising," a major slave revolt planned for the city in June 1822. The plan was uncovered before it was carried out and Vesey was executed.

Driver: A slave who was placed in charge of making sure other slaves worked.

Eli Whitney: Inventor of the cotton gin. He hoped it would help end slavery by replacing slaves. Instead, planters used more slaves to grow more cotton because the machine could remove the seeds more quickly at less cost.

Field Hand: The slaves who worked in the fields. This was difficult and exhausting work. The field hands were at the bottom of the social order of slaves.

Frederick Douglass: An escaped slave and prolific orator. His autobiography was widely read.

Free Blacks: African Americans who were not slaves. Surprisingly, there were free blacks living throughout the South, especially in Southern cities.

Harriet Beecher Stowe: Abolitionist author of "Uncle Tom's Cabin."

Harriet Tubman: A slave who escaped to the North but returned thirteen times to guide other slaves to freedom. Tubman was nicknamed "Moses" and was the most famous conductor on the Underground Railroad. She also worked for women's rights and was a spy for the North during the Civil War.

Henry Ward Beecher: An American Congregationalist minister social reformer, and speaker, known for his support of the abolition of slavery, and his emphasis on God's love.

House Slave: A slave who worked in the plantation owner's home. They were usually better dressed and fed than slaves who worked in the fields, and were therefore higher in the social order among slaves.

Liberty Party: The first political party in the United States to advocate for the end of slavery. Many of its members later joined the Free-Soil Party and eventually the Republican Party.

Nat Turner: An American slave who led a slave rebellion in Virginia on August 21, 1831, that resulted in 60 white deaths and at least 100 black deaths, the largest number of fatalities to occur in one uprising prior to the American Civil War in the Southern United States.

New England Anti-Slavery Society: William Lloyd Garrison's organization. They were the first to advocate for the immediate end of slavery.

Overseer: Whites hired by plantation owners to manage the slaves.

Robert Purvis: An abolitionist. He was 1/4 African American. His home was nearly burned down by a mob who disagreed with his activism.

Scotch-Irish: White immigrants from the borderlands of Scotland and Ireland who settled primarily in the Appalachian Mountains. They are famously independent and distrustful of wealthy elites.

人与团

废除死者：一个努力结束奴隶制的人。

非洲卫理公会教会：通常称为 A.M.E.教会，这是由非洲裔美国人创立的第一个独立的新教教派。

美国殖民化社会：一个组织由废除死刑的人组织的组织，他们筹集资金向非洲的利比里亚释放奴隶。

大卫·沃克（David Walker）：非裔美国人废除死刑犯和出版者"呼吁"，是宣传废除的主要报纸。

丹麦 Vesey：南卡罗来纳州查尔斯顿的一名文明熟练的木匠和领袖，在美国的非裔美国人中间。他被指控成为 1822 年 6 月为该市计划的主要奴隶反抗的"崛起"的头号。该计划在执行之前被发现，Vesey 被处决。

司机：负责确保其他奴隶工作的奴隶。

Eli Whitney：发明家的棉花杜松子酒。他希望通过取代奴隶来帮助结束奴隶制。相反，种植者使用更多的奴隶种植更多的棉花，因为机器可以以更低的成本更迅速地去除种子。

现场手：在田野工作的奴隶。这是困难和耗尽的工作。现场的手是奴隶社会秩序的底部。

弗雷德里克·道格拉斯：一个逃脱的奴隶和多产的演说家。他的自传被广泛阅读。

免费黑人：不是奴隶的非裔美国人令人惊讶的是，整个南部都有自由的黑人，特别是在南部的城市。

哈里特·贝切尔·斯托（Harriet Beecher Stowe）：废除"汤姆叔叔小屋"的作者。

哈里特·图伯曼（Harriet Tubman）：一名逃到北方的奴隶，但返回了十三次，以引导其他奴隶自由。杜布曼被昵称为"摩西"，是地下铁路上最有名的导弹。她还为妇女权利工作，是内战期间的北方间谍。

亨利·沃德·贝切尔（Henry Ward Beecher）：一位美国公民社会改革家，以支持废除奴隶制而闻名的演讲者，以及他对上帝的爱的强调。

房奴：在种植园主人家工作的奴隶。他们通常比在田野中工作的奴隶更好穿衣和喂养，因此在奴隶之间的社会秩序更高。

自由党：美国第一个主张结束奴隶制的政党。其中许多成员后来加入了自由党，最终加入了共和党。

纳特特纳：一位美国奴隶，于 1831 年 8 月 21 日在弗吉尼亚州领导了一次奴隶叛乱，造成 60 人死亡，至少有 100 人死亡，是在美国内战前一次起义发生的最多的死亡人数美国南部。

新英格兰反奴隶制社会：威廉·劳埃德驻军组织。他们是第一个主张立即停止奴隶制的人。

监督人员：种植业主雇用白人管理奴隶。

罗伯特·普维斯：废除死刑的人。他是 1/4 非裔美国人。他的家几乎被一个不同意他的行动主义的暴徒烧毁了。

苏格兰爱尔兰人：来自苏格兰和爱尔兰边界的白人移民主要在阿巴拉契亚山脉定居。他们是着名的独立和不信任富有的精英。

Sojourner Truth: An African-American abolitionist and women's rights activist. Truth was born into slavery in Swartekill, Ulster County, New York, but escaped with her infant daughter to freedom in 1826. Her best-known speech became widely known during the Civil War by the title "Ain't I a Woman?"

Wendell Phillips: An abolitionist from Boston who was nearly lynched by a mob when he spoke. He was a renowned speaker and was nicknamed the golden trumpet of abolition.

William Lloyd Garrison: White abolitionist who published "The Liberator."

索古人真相：非裔美国人废除死刑者和妇女权利活动家。真理诞生于纽约阿尔斯特县斯瓦科克勒的奴隶制，1826 年与她的小女儿一起逃离自由。她最着名的演讲在内战期间被称为"不是我是女人"吗？

温德尔·菲利普斯（Wendell Phillips）：来自波士顿的废除死刑犯，他在谈话时几乎被一名暴徒骗过。他是一个着名的演讲者，被昵称为废除金喇叭。

威廉·劳埃德·加里森（William Lloyd Garrison）：出版"解放者"的白人废除主义者。

KEY CONCEPTS

Chattel Slavery: The system of slavery that developed in the United States in which slaves were considered property.

Emancipation: When the government sets slaves free.

King Cotton: The idea that the cotton industry was the key to the Southern, and more generally American economy.

Manumission: When a slave owner sets his or her slaves free.

Peculiar Institution: Slavery. This was the euphemism used by the South.

The Underground Railroad: The antebellum volunteer resistance movement that assisted slaves in escaping to freedom. Although it was not a railroad, the participants of the system used railroad terminology. Safe places for escaped slaves to stay were called stations and the people who guided the slaves were conductors.

关键概念

Chattel 奴隶制：奴隶制在美国发展，奴隶被视为财产。

解放：当政府摆脱奴隶时，

国王棉花：棉花行业是南方的关键，美国经济更为普遍。

强制：当一个奴隶主将自己的奴隶摆放时，

特殊机构：奴隶制。这是南方所使用的委婉语。

地下铁路：帮助奴隶逃离自由的前额志愿者抵抗运动。虽然这不是铁路，但是系统的参与者使用铁路术语。逃离奴隶的安全场所被称为车站，指导奴隶的人是指挥。

LAWS

Fugitive Slave Act: A law passed in 1850, as part of the Compromise of 1850. It declared that all runaway slaves be brought back to their masters. Abolitionists nicknamed it the "Bloodhound Law."

Gag Rule: A rule that prohibits discussion of a subject.

Slave Codes: Laws in each U.S. state defining the status of slaves and the rights of their owners and giving slave owners absolute power over their slaves. Over time, the slave codes became more and more restrictive.

法律

"逃犯奴隶法"：1850 年通过的一项法律，作为"1850 年妥协"的一部分。它宣布所有失败的奴隶被带回主人。废除死党的人将其命名为"猎犬法"。

Gag 规则：禁止讨论主题的规则。

奴隶代码：每个美国国家的法律规定了奴隶的地位和所有者的权利，并给予奴隶主对他们的奴隶的绝对权力。随着时间的推移，奴隶制度越来越受到限制。

TEXTS

Appeal: Along with "The Liberator" and "The North Star," a major abolitionist newspaper before the Civil War.

North Star: Frederick Douglass's abolitionist newspaper.

The Liberator: William Lloyd Garrison's abolitionist newspaper.

Uncle Tom's Cabin: Harriet Beecher Stowe's abolitionist novel that became a best seller in the North, and was banned in the South. The sympathetic characters helped convince many Northerners to support abolition.

案文

呼吁：随着"解放者"和"北极之星"，是内战前的主要废奴报。

北极星：弗雷德里克·道格拉斯的废除报纸。

解放者：威廉·劳埃德·加里森的废奴报。

汤姆叔叔的小屋：Harriet Beecher Stowe 的废奴小说，成为北方最畅销的小说，在南方被禁止。同情的人物帮助说服许多北方人支持废除。

EVENTS

Antebellum Period: The years in the 1800s before the start of the Civil War in 1860.

活动

Antebellum 时期：1860 年内战开始前的十九年。

Haitian Revolution: In 1791 slaves in Haiti rose in revolt and expelled the French from the island, making Haiti the second independent nation in the Americas.

海地革命：1791 年，海地的奴隶在起义中起义，将法国人从岛上驱逐出境，使海地成为美洲的第二个独立国家。

INNOVATIONS

Cotton Gin: Short for "cotton engine", this machine was invented by Eli Whitney could quickly remove the seeds from raw cotton. Its use allowed plantation owners to greatly increase the production of cotton and drove demand for slaves.

INNOVATIONS

棉花杜松子酒：“棉花发动机”的简称，该机由 Eli Whitney 发明，可以快速从原棉中清除种子。其用途允许种植业主大大增加棉花的产量，并推动对奴隶的需求。

Watch a cotton gin in action

Read the North Star

Read The Liberator

Read Uncle Tom's Cabin

S E C O N D   Q U E S T I O N

2 **DID WESTWARD EXPANSION CAUSE THE CIVIL WAR?**

WAS THE CIVIL WAR A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF SLAVERY?

INTRODUCTION

From before the United States declared in dependence in 1776, slavery had been a contentious issue. The Founding Fathers, in drafting the Constitution had conspicuously ignored the issue. But, as the 1800s progressed, it was a political problem that could not be avoided. Since more people lived in the northern, free states they would always have a majority of representatives in the House. But the Senate was different. Every state sends to Senators to Washington, and there the question of slavery would be decided. If either the free states of the North, or the slave holding states of the South were able to take a majority, their view of America's future would prevail.

Most white Americans agreed that western expansion was crucial to the health of the nation. But what should be done about slavery in the West? As the United States gained new territory, especially after defeating Mexico in the 1840s, the fight about the expansion of slavery became a major question that spawned political feuds, actual fighting, and gave birth to new political parties.

Most white Americans agreed that western expansion was crucial to the health of the nation, but they certainly did not all agree about what should be done about slavery in the West? Slavery might have divided the nation, but slavery had been dividing the nation of generations. Perhaps it was something more that brought all of that animosity to the level of war in 1860.

What do you think? Did westward expansion cause the Civil War?

介绍

从 1776 年美国宣布之前，奴隶制是一个有争议的问题。创始人在起草宪法时明显忽略了这个问题。但是，随着十九世纪的进步，这是一个无法避免的政治问题。由于更多的人生活在北方，自由州他们总是拥有众议院的大多数代表。但参议院是不同的。每个州都向华盛顿提交参议员，那里的奴隶制问题将会被决定。如果北方的自由州或南方的奴隶国家都能够占有多数，那么他们对美国未来的看法就会占上风。

大多数美国白人认为，西方的扩张对于国家的健康至关重要。但是，西方的奴隶制应该怎么做呢？随着美国取得新的领土，特别是在二十世纪四十年代打败墨西哥之后，扩大奴隶制的斗争成为引发政治仇恨，实际战斗，诞生新政治力量的重大问题。

大多数美国白人认为，西方扩张对于国家的健康至关重要，但他们当然并不都同意西方对奴隶制应该怎么做？奴隶制可能分裂国家，但奴隶制已经分裂了几代人。也许更重要的是在 1860 年把所有的仇恨都带到了战争的水平。

你怎么看？西方扩张导致内战？

THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE

The contradictions inherent in the expansion of white male voting rights can also be seen in problems raised by western migration. The new western states were at the forefront of more inclusive voting rights for white men, but their development simultaneously devastated the rights of Native American communities. Native American rights rarely became a controversial public issue. This was not the case for slavery, however, as Northern and Southern whites differed sharply about its proper role in the West.

The incorporation of new western territories into the United States made slavery an explicit concern of national politics. Balancing the interests of slave and free states had played a role from the very start of designing the federal government at the Constitutional Convention in 1787. The crucial compromise there that sacrificed the rights of African Americans in favor of a stronger union among the states exploded once more in 1819 when Missouri petitioned to join the United States as a slave state.

In 1819, the nation contained eleven free and eleven slave states creating a balance in the U.S. senate. Missouri's entrance threatened to throw this parity in favor of slave interests. The debate in Congress over the admission of Missouri was extraordinarily bitter after Congressman James Tallmadge from New York proposed that slavery be prohibited in the new state.

The debate was especially sticky because defenders of slavery relied on a central principle of fairness. How could the Congress deny a new state the right to decide for itself whether or not to allow slavery? If Congress controlled the decision, then the new states would have fewer rights than the original ones.

Henry Clay, a leading congressman, played a crucial role in brokering a two-part solution known as the **Missouri Compromise**. First, Missouri would be admitted to the union as a slave state, but would be balanced by the admission of Maine, a free state, that had long wanted to be separated from Massachusetts. Second, slavery was to be excluded from all new states in the Louisiana Purchase north of the southern boundary of Missouri. People on both sides of the controversy saw the compromise as deeply flawed. Nevertheless, it lasted for over thirty years until the Kansas-Nebraska Act of 1854 determined that new states north of the boundary deserved to be able to exercise their sovereignty in favor of slavery if they so choose.

MISSOURI COMPROMISE

白人男性投票权扩大所固有的矛盾也可以在西方移民问题上得到解决。新的西方国家在白人男子更具包容性的投票权方面处于前列，但同时又破坏了美洲土着社区的权利。美国土着人的权利很少成为一个有争议的公共问题。不过，奴隶制情况并非如此，因为北方和南方白人对西方的适当作用大相径庭。

把新的西方领土融入美国使奴隶制成为国家政治的明确关切。平衡奴隶和自由国家的利益在 1787 年的宪法公约设计联邦政府一开始就发挥了作用。牺牲了非洲裔美国人之间权力的一个关键的妥协，就是有利于各国之间更强大的联盟。更多在 1819 年密苏里州请愿加入美国作为奴隶国。

在 1819 年，该国包含十一个自由和十一个奴隶国家在美国参议院平衡。密苏里州的入口威胁要把这一平价赞成奴隶利益。来自纽约的国会议员詹姆斯·塔尔马德（James Tallmadge）提出在新州禁止奴隶制时，国会对密苏里州的接纳辩论是非常痛苦的。

辩论是特别粘，因为奴隶制的维权者依赖于一个中心的公平原则。国会如何否认新的国家有权决定是否允许奴隶制？如果国会控制这个决定，那么新的国家的权利要比原来的那样少。

领先的国会议员亨利·克莱（Henry Clay）在代理密苏里妥协的两部分解决方案方面发挥了关键作用。首先，密苏里州将作为一个奴隶国家被接纳为工会，但是由于缅因州长期以来一直想要与马萨诸塞州分离的自由州，将会得到平衡。第二，奴隶制被排除在密苏里州南部北部北部路易斯安那州的所有新州。争议双方的人认为妥协是有缺陷的。然而，它持续了三十多年，直到 1854 年"堪萨斯－内布拉斯加州法"确定，如果他们这样做，边界以北的新的国家应该能够行使主权，支持奴隶制。

Democracy and self-determination could clearly be mobilized to extend an unjust institution that contradicted a fundamental American commitment to equality. The Missouri crisis probed an enormously problematic area of American politics that would explode in a civil war. As Thomas Jefferson observed about the Missouri crisis, "This momentous question, like a fire-bell in the night, awakened and filled me with terror."

SLAVERY AND THE MEXICAN-AMERICAN WAR

While the admission of Missouri as a state had posed a serious political challenge, the Mexican-American War of 1846 to 1848 created the most problems of all. After Mexico surrendered and ceded half of its territory to the United States, there were vast new tracts of land, mostly in the southern half of the West, which were in question.   Would slavery be allowed in these new territories?

Abolitionists rightly feared that attempts would be made to plant cotton in the new territory, which would bring the blight of slavery. Slaveholders feared that if slavery were prohibited in the new territory, southern slaveholding states would lose power in Congress.

Even before the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo ending the war had been ratified by the Senate, both houses of Congress became the scene of angry debate over the spoils of war. Congress represented every political philosophy regarding slavery. Legal scholars discussed the right of Congress — or anyone else — to restrict slavery from the new lands. The specter of **secession** had risen again. Desperately the elder statesmen of the federal legislature proposed methods of keeping the country together.

The country's founders left no clear solution to the issue of slavery in the Constitution. Popular sovereignty, amendment, nullification, and secession were all discussed as possible remedies. In the end, conflict was avoided with the passing of the Compromise of 1850.

By the standards of his day, David Wilmot could be considered a racist. Yet the Pennsylvania representative was so adamantly against the extension of slavery to lands ceded by Mexico, he made a proposition that would divide the Congress. On August 8, 1846, Wilmot introduced legislation in the House that boldly declared, "neither slavery nor involuntary servitude shall ever exist" in lands won in the Mexican-American War. His proposal has become known as the **Wilmot Proviso**. If he was not opposed to slavery, why would Wilmot propose such an action? Why

民主和自决可以明确地动员起来，扩大一个不符合美国基本对人权的平等承诺的不正当制度。密苏里危机探索了一场在内战中爆发的美国政治的一个非常有问题的地区。正如托马斯·杰斐逊（Thomas Jefferson）关于密苏里州危机的观察，"这个重要的问题，像夜晚的一个火铃，唤醒了我的恐怖。

奴隶制与美国与美国的战争

虽然密苏里州成为一个国家已经构成了严重的政治挑战，但 1846 年至 1848 年的墨西哥 - 美国战争造成了最大的问题。在墨西哥向美国投降一半的领土之后，有大片新的土地，大部分在西部的南半部分，这是有争议的。在这些新的领土上是否允许奴隶制

废除死党的人正当地担心会在新的领土上种植棉花，这样会带来奴隶制的枯竭。奴隶主担心，如果在新的领土上禁止奴隶制，南方奴隶国将在国会失去权力。

即使在参议院批准"瓜达卢佩伊达尔戈条约"之前，国会两院都成为对战争蹂躏的愤怒辩论的场面。大会代表了关于奴隶制的每一种政治哲学。法律学者讨论了国会或其他任何人将奴隶制限制在新的土地上的权利。分裂的幽灵再次升起。联邦立法机关的老大政治家拼命地提出了将国家保持在一起的方法。

该国的创始人对"宪法"中的奴隶制问题没有明确的解决办法。人民主权，修正案，无效和分裂国家都被作为可能的补救办法进行了讨论。最后，随着 1850 年的妥协的过去，避免了冲突。

按照他当天的标准，David Wilmot 可以被认为是种族主义者。然而，宾夕法尼亚州的代表坚决反对将奴隶制扩大到墨西哥所割给的土地，他提出将会分裂国会的主张。 1846 年 8 月 8 日，威尔莫特在众议院提出立法，大胆宣布，在墨西哥 - 美国战争中获得的土地上，不得存在奴隶制和非自愿奴役。他的建议被称为"威胁规定"。如果他不反对奴隶制，为什么威尔莫特提出这样的行动？为什么只有一个小而不断增长的少数民族的废除死刑的北方同意呢？

would the North, which only contained a small, but growing minority, of abolitionists, agree?

Wilmot and other Northerners were angered by President Polk. They felt that the entire Cabinet and national agenda were dominated by Southern minds and Southern principles. Polk was willing to fight for Southern territory, but proved willing to compromise when it came to the North. Polk had lowered the tariff and denied funds for internal improvements, both to the dismay of Northerners. Now they felt a war was being fought to extend the Southern way of life. The term **Slave Power** jumped off the lips of northern lawmakers when they angrily referred to their Southern colleagues. It was time for Northerners to be heard.

威尔莫特和其他北方人波尔克总统感到愤怒。他们认为，整个内阁和国家议程都由南方的思想和南方原则所主导。波尔克愿意为南部地区而战，但是当北方来临时，他们愿意妥协。波尔克降低了关税，剥夺了内部改善的资金，无论是对北方人的沮丧。现在，他们觉得正在为扩大南方生活方式而进行战争。当奴隶权力愤怒地提到他们的南方同事时，奴隶权力一词跳出了北方立法者的嘴唇。现在是北方人听到的时候了。

Though Wilmot's heart did not bleed for the slave, he envisioned California as a place where free white Pennsylvanians could work without the competition of slave labor. Since the North was more populous and had more Representatives in the House, the Wilmot Proviso passed. Laws require the approval of both houses of Congress, however. The Senate, equally divided between free states and slave states could not muster the majority necessary for approval. Angrily the House passed the Wilmot Proviso several times, all to no avail. It would never become law.

虽然威尔莫特的心脏没有流血的奴隶，他设想加利福尼亚州是一个免费的白人宾夕法尼亚人可以在没有奴隶劳动竞争的情况下工作的地方。由于北方人口众多，在众议院有更多的代表，威尔莫特条例草案通过。然而，法律要求国会两院批准。在自由州和奴隶国之间平等分配的参议院无法让多数人获得批准。愤怒地，众议院多次通过了威尔莫特条例，全部没有效果。它永远不会成为法律。

For years, the arguments for and against slavery were debated in the churches and in the newspapers. The House of Representatives had passed a gag rule forbidding the discussion of slavery for much of the previous decade. The issue could no longer be avoided. Lawmakers in the House and Senate, North and South, would have to stand up and be counted.

多年来，反对奴隶制的论据在教会和报纸上进行了辩论。众议院通过了一项禁止在过去十年中大部分时间讨论奴隶制的规则。这个问题不可避免。众议院和参议院的北方和南方的立法者将不得不站出来计数。

CLAY, CALHOUN AND WEBSTER

CLAY, CALHOUN, 和 WEBSTER

Henry Clay of Kentucky, John C. Calhoun of South Carolina, and Daniel Webster of Massachusetts dominated national politics from the end of the War of 1812 until their deaths in the early 1850s. Although none would ever be President, the collective impact they created in Congress was far greater than any President of the era, with the exception of Andrew Jackson. There was one issue that loomed over the nation throughout their time in power — slavery. They were continuously successful in keeping peace in America by forging a series of compromises. The next generation's leaders were not.

肯塔基州的亨利·克莱，南卡罗来纳州的约翰·卡尔霍恩和马萨诸塞州的丹尼尔·韦伯斯特（Daniel Webster），从 1812 年的战争结束到 19 世纪 50 年代初期他们的死亡为主。虽然没有人会是总统，但他们在国会所创造的集体影响远远超过任何时代的总统，除了安德鲁·杰克逊。在这个时代，奴隶制有一个问题在全国蔓延。他们通过进行一系列的妥协，在美国保持和平方面不断取得成功。下一代的领导人不是。

The Gold Rush led to the rapid settlement of California which resulted in its imminent admission as the 31st state. Southerners

淘金热导致加利福尼亚州的迅速解决，导致其即将进入第 31 个州。南方人认识到，由于墨西哥禁止奴隶

recognized that there were few slaves in California because Mexico had prohibited slavery. Immediate admission would surely mean California would be the 16th free state, giving the non-slave-holding states an edge in the Senate. Already holding the House of Representatives, the free states could then dominate legislation.

Texas was claiming land that was part of New Mexico. As a slave state, any expansion of the boundaries of Texas would be opening new land to slavery. Northerners were opposed. The North was also appalled at the ongoing practice of slavery in Washington, DC, the nation's capital — a practice the South was not willing to let go. The lines were drawn as the three Senatorial giants took the stage for the last critical time.

制，加利福尼亚州的奴隶很少。立即入场肯定意味着加州将是第 16 个自由州，给非奴隶国家在参议院的边缘。自由国家已经举行众议院，可以统治立法。

德州人声称是新墨西哥一部分的土地。作为奴隶国，德克萨斯边界的任何扩张都将开辟新的奴隶制土地。北方人反对。北方也对在华盛顿特区，全国首都的奴隶制做法感到震惊，这是南方不愿放弃的做法。由于三位参议员巨人在上个关键时刻踏上舞台，因此被绘制出来。

Secondary Source: Illustration
A page from a history book for children published in 1917 celebrating the great statesmen of the mid-1800s.

次要资料来源：插图
1917 年出版的儿童历史书页面，庆祝了十九世纪中叶的伟大的政治家。
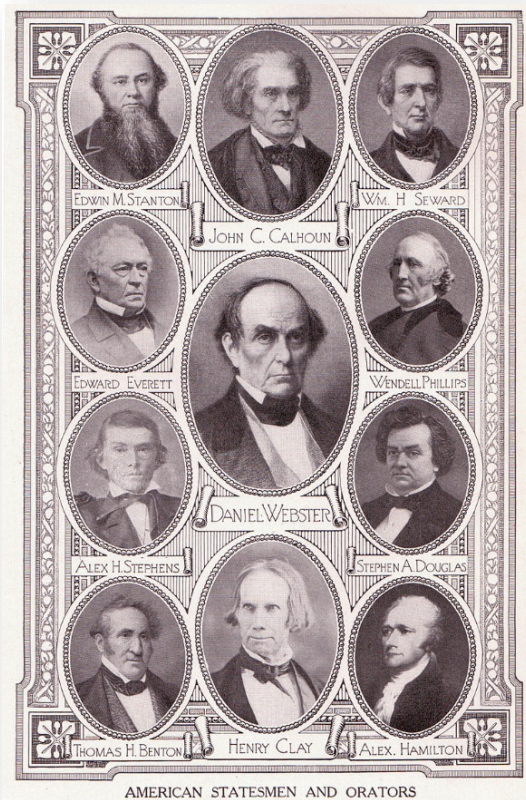
Henry Clay had brokered compromises before. When the Congress was divided in 1820 over the issue of slavery in the Louisiana Territory, Clay set forth the **Missouri Compromise**. When South Carolina nullified the tariff in 1832, Clay saved the day with the Compromise Tariff of 1833. After 30 years in

亨利·克莱（Henry Clay）之前已经进行了妥协。当议会在 1820 年在路易斯安那州领土上的奴隶制问题上分裂时，Clay 提出了密苏里州的妥协。当南卡罗来纳州在 1832 年废除关税时，克莱拯救了 1833 年的妥协关税的一天。国会三十年后，总统府三次失败，克莱希

Congress and three unsuccessful attempts at the Presidency, Clay wanted badly to make good with yet another nation-saving deal. He put forth a set of eight proposals that he hoped would pass muster with his colleagues.

John C. Calhoun took to the floor next. Although sick and dying with consumption, he sat sternly in the Senate chamber, as his speech was read. The compromises would betray the South, he claimed. Northerners would have to agree to federal protection of slavery for the South to feel comfortable remaining in the Union. His words foreshadowed the very doom to the Union that would come within the decade.

Daniel Webster spoke three days after Calhoun's speech. With the nation's fate in the balance, he pleaded with Northerners to accept Southern demands, for the sake of Union. Withdrawing his former support for the Wilmot Proviso, he hoped to persuade enough of his colleagues to move closer to Clay's proposals. Although there was no immediate deal, his words "liberty and union, now and forever, one and inseparable" echoed in the minds of the Congressmen as they debated into that hot summer.

POPULAR SOVEREIGNTY

In the heat of the Wilmot Proviso debate, many Southern lawmakers began to question the right of Congress to determine the status of slavery in any territory. According to John Calhoun, the territories belonged to all the states. Why should a citizen of one state be denied the right to take his property, including slaves, into territory owned by all? This line of reasoning began to dominate the Southern argument. The Congress had a precedent for outlawing slavery in territories. It had done so in the Old Northwest with the passing of the Northwest Ordinance in 1787. The Missouri Compromise also had banned slavery above the **36º30' latitude** line. But times were different.

As the Mexican War drew to a close and no compromise could be reached in the Wilmot argument, the campaign for President became heated. The Democratic standard bearer, Lewis Cass of Michigan, coined the term **popular sovereignty** for a new solution that had begun to emerge. The premise was simple. Let the people of the territories themselves decide whether slavery would be permitted. The solution seemed perfect. In a country that has championed democracy, letting the people decide seemed right, if not obvious.

However simple popular sovereignty seemed, it was difficult to put into practice. By what means would the people decide?

望能够再次成功实现国家的拯救。他提出了一套他希望与他的同事一起通过的八项建议。

约翰·卡尔霍恩接下来发言。正如他的讲话一样，他虽然生气而死于消费，却严肃地坐在参议院议院。他声称，妥协妥协将背叛南方。北方人必须同意联邦对南方的奴隶制保护，以便在联盟中感到舒服。他的话预示着十年内将要到联盟的厄运。

丹尼尔韦伯斯特在卡尔霍恩的讲话三天后发表讲话。随着国家的平衡，他为了联盟而恳求北方接受南方的要求。他希望借助他以前的支持 Wilmot Proviso 来劝说他的同事们更接近于 Clay 的建议。虽然没有立即处理，但他说"自由与和平，现在永远是一个不可分割的"，他们在这个炎热的夏天进行辩论时，在国会议员的心目中相呼应。

热门的 SOVEREIGNTY

在"威尔默条例"辩论的热情中，许多南方议员开始质疑国会决定任何领土上奴隶制地位的权利。据约翰·卡尔霍恩所说，这些领土属于各州。一个国家的公民为什么不能剥夺包括奴隶在内的财产的所有权所有权？这一推理线开始主宰南方的论点。国会有一个在领土上禁止奴隶制的先例。在 1787 年西北条例通过之后，它已经在旧西北地区这样做了。密苏里州的妥协也已经禁止在 36º30 纬度线以上的奴隶制。但时代不同。

随着墨西哥战争的临近，威尔莫特的辩论也不能达成妥协，总统的运动变得热烈起来。密歇根州的民主党总统刘易斯·卡斯（Lewis Cass）为民主主义赋予了一个已经开始出现的新解决方案。前提很简单。让领土上的人自己决定是否允许奴隶制。解决方案似乎很完美。在一个支持民主的国家，让人们决定似乎是正确的，如果不是明显的。

但是，简单的民主主义似乎是很难付诸实践的。人们以什么方式决定？直接还是间接？如果预定一个民众

Directly or indirectly? If a popular vote were scheduled, what guarantees could be made against voter fraud? If slavery were voted down, would the individuals who already owned slaves be allowed to keep them? Cass and the Democrats did not say. His opponent, Zachary Taylor, ignored the issue of slavery altogether in his campaign, and won the election of 1848.

As the 1840s melted into the 1850s, **Stephen Douglas** became the loudest proponent of popular sovereignty. As long as the issue was discussed theoretically, he had many supporters. In fact, to many, popular sovereignty was the perfect means to avoid the problem. But problems do not tend to disappear when they are evaded — they often become worse.

THE COMPROMISE OF 1850

With the issue of slavery in the territories threatening to divide the nation yet again, the giants — Calhoun, Webster, and Clay — developed another compromise. It would be their last, great act of statesmanship. Still the Congress debated the contentious issues well into the summer. Each time Clay's compromise was set forth for a vote, it did not receive a majority. Henry Clay himself had to leave in sickness, before the dispute could be resolved. In his place, Stephen Douglas worked tirelessly to end the fight. On July 9, President Zachary Taylor died of food poisoning. His successor, Millard Fillmore, was much more interested in compromise. The environment for a deal was set. By September, Clay's Compromise became law.

California was admitted to the Union as the 16th free state. In exchange, the South was guaranteed that no federal restrictions on slavery would be placed on Utah or New Mexico. Texas lost its boundary claims in New Mexico, but the Congress compensated Texas with $10 million. Slavery was maintained in the nation's capital, but the slave trade was prohibited. Finally, and most controversially, a fugitive slave law was passed, requiring Northerners to return runaway slaves to their owners under penalty of law.

投票，可以保证可以对选民欺诈？如果奴隶制被否决，那么已经拥有奴隶的人是否可以保留他们？卡斯和民主党人没有说。他的对手扎克里·泰勒在他的竞选中完全无视了奴隶制问题，赢得了 1848 年的选举。

十八世纪四十年代融入了十五世纪五十年代，斯蒂芬·道格拉斯成为最受欢迎的主权倡导者。只要理论上讨论这个问题，他有很多支持者。其实，对很多人来说，受欢迎的主权是避免这个问题的完美手段。但问题在逃避时往往不会消失 - 他们往往变得更糟。

1850 年的折中

随着在威胁分裂国家的领土上的奴隶制问题，巨人 - 卡尔霍恩，韦伯斯特和克莱 - 发展了另一个妥协。这将是他们最后一个伟大的政治家的行为。国会仍然在夏季辩论有争议的问题。每当 Clay 的妥协被提出来投票时，它没有获得多数票。亨利·克莱（Henry Clay）自己不得不离开病房，争端可以解决。在他的位置，斯蒂芬·道格拉斯不知疲倦地结束了斗争。 7 月 9 日，扎卡里·泰勒总统死于食物中毒。他的继任者米勒·费尔莫（Millard Fillmore）对妥协感兴趣更多。交易的环境已经确定了。到 9 月份，克莱的妥协成为法律。

加州被列入联盟第十六大自由州。作为交换，南方保证没有联邦对奴隶制的限制在犹他州或新墨西哥州。德克萨斯州失去了在新墨西哥州的边界索赔，但国会以 1000 万美元的价格向德克萨斯州赔偿奴隶制维持在国家首都，但奴隶贸易被禁止。最后，最有争议的是，逃犯的奴隶法已经通过，要求北方人将法律拖延到失败的奴隶身上。

The Terms of the Compromise:

妥协条款：

For the North:

对于北方：

- California admitted as a free state

- 加利福尼亚承认自由州

- Slave trade prohibited in Washington D.C.

- 华盛顿特区禁止奴隶贸易

For the South

对于南方

- No slavery restrictions in Utah or New Mexico territories

- 犹他州或新墨西哥州无奴隶制限制

- Slaveholding permitted in Washington D.C.

- 华盛顿特区允许奴隶制

- Texas gets $10 million

- 德克萨斯州获得 1000 万美元

- Fugitive Slave Act

- "逃犯奴隶法"

Who won and who lost in the deal? Although each side received benefits, the North seemed to gain the most. The balance of the Senate was now with the free states, although California voted with the South on many issues in the 1850s. The major victory for the South was the Fugitive Slave Law. In the end, the North refused to enforce it. Massachusetts even called for its nullification, stealing an argument from John C. Calhoun. Northerners claimed the law was unfair. The flagrant violation of the Fugitive Slave Law set the scene for the tempest that emerged later in the decade. But for now, Americans had hope that the fragile peace would prevail.

谁赢了，谁在交易中输了？虽然各方都受益匪浅，北方似乎最大。参议院的平衡现在与自由州有关，尽管加州在十九世纪五十年代在许多问题上与南方投票。南方的主要胜利是"逃犯奴隶法"。最后，北方拒绝执行。马萨诸塞州甚至呼吁其无效，窃取了约翰·卡尔霍恩的争论。北方人称法律不公平。公然违反"逃犯奴隶法"规定了十年后发生的暴风雨现象。但现在美国人希望脆弱的和平盛行。

By 1852, Clay, Calhoun, and Webster had all passed away. They left a rich legacy behind them. Clay of the West, Calhoun of the South, and Webster of the North loved and served their country greatly. The generation that followed produced no leader that could unite the country without the force of arms.

到 1852 年，克莱，卡尔霍恩和韦伯斯特都已经去世了。他们留下了丰富的遗产。西方的克莱伦，北方的卡尔霍恩，以及北方的韦伯斯特，大大地为他们的国家服务。后来的一代没有武装力量就没有统一国家的领导人。

THE KANSAS-NEBRASKA ACT

堪萨斯 - 内布拉斯加州法案

For decades, both Northern states and Southern states had threatened secession and dissolution of the Union over the question of where slavery was to be permitted. At issue was power. Both sides sought to limit the governing power of the other by maintaining a balance of membership in Congress. This meant ensuring that admission of a new state where slavery was outlawed was matched by a state permitting slavery. In the Missouri Compromise, for example, at the same time that

几十年来，北方国家和南方各国威胁说联盟的分裂和解散是在允许奴隶制的问题上。问题是权力。通过维持国会议员的平衡，双方力图限制对方的执政权力。这意味着确保接受奴隶制非法的新国家与允许奴隶制的国家相匹配。例如，在密苏里州的妥协中，同时密苏里州作为一个奴隶国家进军联盟，缅因州作为一个自由州进入联盟。

Missouri entered the Union as a slave state, Maine entered the Union as a free state.

New states were organized into self-governing territories before they became states. Hence, they developed a position on the slavery issue well before their admission to the Union. Southerners held that slavery must be permitted in all territories. Northerners held that slavery must not be extended into new territories.

新州在成为国家之前被组织成为自治领土。因此，他们在加入联盟之前就对奴隶制问题发表了立场。南方人认为，所有领土必须允许奴隶制。北方人认为，奴隶制不得扩大到新的领土。

If slavery were not permitted in the territories, slavery would never gain a foothold within them and Southern power in Congress would gradually erode. If either side were successful in gaining a distinct advantage, many felt disunion and civil war would follow.

如果领土上不允许奴隶制，奴隶制将永远不会在其中站稳脚跟，国会的南方权力将逐渐消失。如果任何一方成功地获得了明显的优势，许多人会觉得脱离和内战会随之而来。

Kansas would be the battleground on which the North and South would first fight. The **Kansas-Nebraska Act** led both to statehood and to corruption, hatred, anger, and violence. Men from neighboring Missouri stuffed ballot boxes in Kansas to ensure that a legislature friendly to slavery would be elected. Anti-slavery, or free soil, settlers formed a legislature of their own in Topeka. Within two years, there would be armed conflict between proponents of slavery and those against it.

堪萨斯州将是南北战争的战场。"堪萨斯 - 内布拉斯加州法"导致了国家地位和腐败，仇恨，愤怒和暴力。来自邻国密苏里州的男子在堪萨斯州填满投票箱，以确保对奴隶制友善的立法机关当选。反奴役或自由的土地，定居者在托皮卡组建了自己的立法机构。在两年内，奴隶制的支持者和反对奴隶制的人之间将存在武装冲突。

The Kansas-Nebraska Act of 1854 may have been the single most significant event leading to the Civil War. By the early 1850s settlers and entrepreneurs wanted to move into the area now known as Nebraska. However, until the area was organized as a territory, settlers would not move there because they could not legally hold a claim on the land. The Southern states' representatives in Congress were in no hurry to permit a Nebraska territory because the land lay north of the 36°30' parallel — where slavery had been outlawed by the Missouri Compromise of 1820. Just when things between the North and South were in an uneasy balance, Kansas and Nebraska opened fresh wounds.

1854 年堪萨斯 - 内布拉斯加州法案可能是导致内战的唯一最重要的事件。到 20 世纪 50 年代初，定居者和企业家想进入现在被称为内布拉斯加州的地区。但是，直到这个地区被当作一个领土，定居者不会在那里移动，因为他们不能在土地上合法地提出索赔。南方各国代表在国会不急于允许内布拉斯加州领土，因为这个土地位于 36°30'平行的北边，那里的奴隶制是 1820 年的密苏里妥协所禁止的。就在南北之间的事情是在不平衡的情况下，堪萨斯州和内布拉斯加州开了新鲜伤口。

The person behind the Kansas-Nebraska Act was Senator Stephen Douglas of Illinois. He said he wanted to see Nebraska made into a territory and, to win Southern support, proposed a Southern state inclined to support slavery. It was Kansas. Underlying it all was his desire to build a transcontinental railroad to go through Chicago. The Kansas-Nebraska Act allowed each territory to decide the issue of slavery on the basis of popular sovereignty. Kansas with slavery would violate the Missouri Compromise, which had kept the Union from falling apart for the last thirty-four years. The long-standing compromise would have

堪萨斯 - 内布拉斯加州法案背后的人是伊利诺伊州的 Stephen Douglas 参议员。他说，他希望看到内布拉斯加州成为一个领土，并赢得南方支持，提出了一个倾向支持奴隶制的南方国家。这是堪萨斯州。所有这一切都是他打算建立一条横贯大西洋铁路穿越芝加哥的愿望。"堪萨斯 - 内布拉斯加州法"允许每个领土在人民主权的基础上决定奴隶制问题。堪萨斯州的奴隶制将违反密苏里妥协，这使得联盟在过去三十四年内分崩离去。长期的妥协必须被废除。反对派激烈，但

1   DID SLAVERY CAUSE THE CIVIL WAR?

WAS THE
CIVIL WAR
A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT
FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF
SLAVERY?

to be repealed. Opposition was intense, but ultimately the bill passed in May of 1854. Territory north of the sacred 36°30' line was now open to popular sovereignty. The North was outraged.

The political effects of Douglas' bill were enormous. Passage of the bill irrevocably split the Whig Party, one of the two major political parties in the country at the time. Every northern Whig had opposed the bill; almost every Southern Whig voted for it. With the emotional issue of slavery involved, there was no way a common ground could be found. Most of the Southern Whigs soon were swept into the Democratic Party. Northern Whigs reorganized themselves with other non-slavery interests to become the **Republican Party**, the party of Abraham Lincoln. This left the Democratic Party as the sole remaining institution that crossed sectional lines. Animosity between the North and South was again on the rise. The North felt that if the Compromise of 1820 was ignored, the Compromise of 1850 could be ignored as well. Violations of the hated Fugitive Slave Law increased. Trouble was indeed back with a vengeance.

BLEEDING KANSAS

Slavery was quite likely to be outlawed in Nebraska, where cotton doesn't grow well. The situation in Kansas was entirely different, where the land was similar to Missouri's, which was a slave state. Kansas was to be governed by the principle of popular sovereignty. Whether Kansas was to be slave or free would be decided at the polls. Both free and slave forces were determined to hold sway.

Missouri counties that bordered Kansas were strongly pro-slavery and wanted their neighbor to be a slave state. In the fall of 1854, Senator David Atchison of Missouri led over 1,700 men from Missouri into Kansas to vote for their pro-slavery representative. These were the infamous **Border Ruffians**, who threatened to shoot, burn and hang those opposed to slavery.

Although their votes were later ruled fraudulent, their candidate was elected to Congress. When it came time to elect a territorial legislature the following March, almost 5,000 men came into the state from Missouri to cast illegal ballots. Pro-slavery forces had the numbers, not the ethics, on their side. Anti-slavery settlers, though the majority in Kansas, were outvoted. The result of the election through fraud was a legislature with 36 pro-slavery delegates and 3 anti-slavery delegates.

As one of their first acts, this legislature passed a harsh slave code that provided fines and imprisonment simply for expressing

最终法案于 1854 年 5 月通过。神圣 36°30'线以北的领土现在开放给人民的主权。北方愤怒。

道格拉斯法案的政治影响是巨大的。通过这一法案，不可分割地分裂了当时该国两大政党之一的高价格党。每个北方惠格都反对该法案;几乎每个南方惠特人都投了赞成票。随着涉及的奴隶制的情感问题，没有办法找到共同点。大部分南方惠灵顿很快被扫入民主党。北方人士以其他非奴隶制利益重组自己，成为共和党，亚伯拉罕·林肯党。这使民主党成为唯一跨越分界线的剩余机构。南北之间的仇恨再次上升。北方认为，如果 1820 年的妥协被忽视，1850 年的妥协也可以被忽略。违反仇恨奴隶法的行为有所增加。麻烦确实回到了复仇之中。

叮当 K

内布拉斯加州的奴隶制很可能是非法的，那里的棉花生长不好。堪萨斯州的局势完全不同，那里的土地类似于一个奴隶国的密苏里州。堪萨斯受到人民主权原则的管辖。堪萨斯是奴隶还是自由都会在民意测验中决定。自由和奴隶的力量决定摇摆。

与堪萨斯州接壤的密苏里州，强烈地是奴隶制，并希望邻国成为奴隶国。 1854 年秋天，密苏里州的参议员大卫·阿奇森（David Atchison）领导了 1700 多名密苏里州的男子进入堪萨斯州，为其亲奴隶代表投票。这些是臭名昭着的边界人士，他们威胁要射杀，烧毁和反对奴隶制的人。

虽然他们的选票后来被裁定为欺诈，他们的候选人当选为国会。在 3 月份选举领土立法机构的时候，将有近 5000 名男子从密苏里州进入该州进行非法投票。奴隶制力量在他们身边有数量而不是伦理。尽管堪萨斯州的大多数人是反奴役定居者，通过欺诈选举的结果是一个立法机关，有 36 名在职奴隶制代表和 3 名反奴役代表。

这个立法机关作为他们的第一个行为之一，通过了一个严厉的奴隶制度，只是为了表达反对奴隶制的意见

opinions against slavery. The death penalty would be administered to any individual found guilty of assisting slaves to revolt or escape. It also legalized the "border ruffian" vote by not requiring voters to be residents in Kansas prior to voting and made the law retroactive to the preceding elections.

Within a year, however, the population of anti-slavery residents in Kansas grew and far outnumbered legal residents of Kansas who were pro-slavery. They were not prepared to obey the laws of the Bogus Legislature, seated in Shawnee Mission. Organized under the name of **Free Soilers**, they drew up a free state constitution and elected a separate governor and state legislature located in Topeka. The result was a state with two governments. Violence would soon follow.

The town of Lawrence was the center of Kansas's anti-slavery movement. It was named for Amos Lawrence, a New England financier who provided aid to anti-slavery farmers and settlers. This group went beyond simple monetary aid. New England Abolitionists shipped boxes of Sharps rifles, named Beecher's Bibles to anti-slavery forces. The name for the rifles came from a comment by Henry Ward Beecher, the anti-slavery preacher who had remarked that a rifle might be a more powerful moral agent on the Kansas plains than a Bible. The lines were now drawn. Each side had passion, and each side had guns.

The administration of President Franklin Pierce refused to step in to resolve the election dispute resulting from the "border ruffians." In the spring of 1856, Judge Samuel Lecompte demanded that members of the anti-slavery government in Kansas, called the Free-Soil government, be indicted for treason. Many leaders in this government lived in Lawrence. On May 21, 1856, the pro-slavery forces sprang into action. A posse of over 800 men from Kansas and Missouri rode to Lawrence to arrest members of the free state government. The citizens of Lawrence decided against resistance. However, the mob was not satisfied. They proceeded to destroy two newspaper offices as they threw the printing presses from the Free-Soil newspaper into the nearby river. They burned and looted homes and shops. As a final message to Abolitionists, they aimed their cannons at the Free State Hotel and smashed it into oblivion.

The attack inflamed almost everyone. Republicans introduced bills to bring Kansas into the Union under the free state government, while Democrats introduced bills to bring in Kansas as a slave state. Neither party alone could get the votes necessary to win. To increase readership, Republican newspapers exploited the situation in Kansas. Their attack galvanized the northern

而提供罚款和监禁。任何个人被判定犯有协助奴隶叛逃或逃跑的个人，将被处以死刑。它也使"边界叛乱"投票合法化，不要求选民在投票前成为堪萨斯州的居民，并将法律追溯到前一届选举。

然而，一年之内，堪萨斯州的反奴隶制居民人口增长远远超过了堪萨斯州的合法居民，这些居民是奴隶制的。他们不准备遵守坐在 Shawnee 使命的虚假立法机关的法律。以自由土人的名义组织起来，制定了一部自由的国家宪法，并选举了位于托皮卡的独立的州长和州立法机关。结果是两国政府。不久之后暴力事件就会发生

劳伦斯镇是堪萨斯反奴役运动的中心。它被命名为新西兰金融家阿莫斯劳伦斯，为反奴隶制农民和定居者提供援助。这个组织超出了简单的货币援助。新英格兰废除奴隶主派出了一批 Sharps 步枪，命名为 Beecher 的圣经，反对奴隶制。步枪的名字来自反奴隶制传教士亨利·沃德·贝切尔（Henry Ward Beecher）的评论，他指出，步枪可能是堪萨斯平原上比圣经更强大的道德主义者。线条现在被绘制。每一方都有激情，每一方都有枪支。

总统富兰克林皮尔斯（Franklin Pierce）的行政部门拒绝采取措施解决"边境叛乱者"所引起的选举争端。1856 年春天，塞缪尔·拉科普特法官要求堪萨斯州的反奴役政府成员称为自由土地政府，以叛国罪。这个政府的许多领导人都住在劳伦斯。 1856 年 5 月 21 日，奴隶制势力开始了。来自堪萨斯州和密苏里州的 800 多名男子乘坐劳伦斯逮捕自由州政府成员。劳伦斯公民决定反抗。不过，暴徒不满意。他们在将自由土报上的印刷机投入附近的河流时，摧毁了两家报社。他们烧毁了家里和商店。作为对废除死党的人的最后消息，他们将自己的大炮瞄准自由州酒店，将其摧毁。

这次袭击几乎使每个人都发炎。共和党人提出了法案，将自由州政府带入堪萨斯联邦，而民主党则提出了将堪萨斯作为奴隶国家的法案。双方都不能获得必要的选票。为了增加读者群，共和党报纸利用了堪萨斯州的局势。他们的袭击使北方国家像以前一样没有

states like nothing before. It went beyond passing pro-slavery laws. The **Sack of Lawrence** was a direct act of violent aggression by slave-owning Southern Fire Eaters.

任何形式。它超越了传统的奴隶制法。劳伦斯袋是奴隶拥有的南方消防员的暴力侵略的直接行为。

Secondary Source: Mural

The mural "The Tragic Prelude" immortalizes John Brown and decorates the walls of the Kansas State Capitol building. It was painted in the 1900s by John Steuart Curry.

次要资料来源：壁画

壁画"悲剧前奏"使约翰·布朗永生，装饰堪萨斯州议会大厦的墙壁。它是在 20 世纪由约翰·斯图亚特·库里画的。

John Brown was not a timid man. A devout reader of the Bible, he found human bondage immoral and unthinkable. The father of 20 children, he and his wife Mary settled in Kansas to wage a war on the forces of slavery. A few days after the sack of Lawrence, Brown sought revenge. He was furious that the people of Lawrence had chosen not to fight. He told his followers that they must "fight fire with fire," and they must "strike terror in the hearts of the pro-slavery people." In his eyes, the only just fate for those responsible for the border ruffian laws was death. A great believer in "an eye for an eye," John Brown sought to avenge the sack of Lawrence.

约翰·布朗不是一个胆小的人。圣经虔诚的读者，他发现人类的奴役是不道德的，不可思议的。 20 个孩子的父亲，他和他的妻子玛丽定居在堪萨斯州，对奴隶制的力量进行战争。在劳伦斯之后的几天，布朗寻求报复。他对劳伦斯人民选择不打架感到愤怒。他告诉他的追随者，他们必须"用火打火"，他们必须"在奴隶制的人的心中打击恐怖"。在他眼里，对边界歹徒法案负责的唯一命运就是死亡。一个伟大的信徒，"眼睛的眼睛，"约翰·布朗试图报复劳伦斯的袋子。

Vengeance would come on the night of May 24, three days after the Lawrence affair. Setting out after dark with seven others and calling himself the Army of the North, Brown entered the pro-slavery town of **Pottawatomie Creek**. Armed with rifles, knives, and broadswords, Brown and his band stormed the houses of his enemies. One by one, Brown's group dragged out helpless victims and hacked at their heads with the broadswords. In one encounter, they even killed two sons of an individual they sought. Before the night was through, five victims lay brutally slain by the hands of John Brown.

复仇将在劳伦斯事件三天后的五月二十四日晚上过来。布朗在黑暗之后与另外七人相呼应，称自己是北方的军队，布朗进入了职业奴隶组织 Pottawatomie Creek。布朗和他的乐队配备了步枪，刀和阔剑，冲击了敌人的房屋。一个接一个地，布朗的小组把无助的受害者拖下去，用大刀砍下头脑。在一次遭遇中，他们甚至杀死了他们寻求的一个人的两个儿子。在晚上过去之前，五名受害者被约翰·布朗的手中残酷地杀死。

It was the South's turn to be outraged. Destroying property was one thing, but no one had been killed at Lawrence. Brown had raised the stakes. He and his followers were doggedly hunted well into the summer. Federal troops arrested two of Brown's sons who had not been with him. Border ruffians burned the Brown homesteads to the ground. But John Brown lived to fight

南方的轮到是愤怒。破坏财产是一回事，但劳伦斯没有人被杀害。布朗提出了赌注。他和他的追随者被困在夏天很好地追捕。联邦部队逮捕了布朗的两个没有和他同在的儿子。边 uff ians 将褐色的家园烧毁在地上。但是，约翰·布朗（John Brown）曾经活过一天。现在是逃犯，他去北方，被废除者所接受，像一个邪

another day. Now a fugitive, he traveled north where he was received by abolitionists like a cult hero. This would not be the last America would hear of John Brown. He would again make national headlines at Harper's Ferry in 1859.

The Sack of Lawrence and the Pottawatomie Creek Massacre set off a brutal **guerrilla war in Kansas**. By the end of 1856, over 200 people would be gunned down in cold blood. Property damage reached millions of dollars. Federal troops were sent in to put down the fighting, but they were too few to have much effect. Kansas served as a small scale prelude to the bloody catastrophe that engulfed the entire nation just five years later.

CONCLUSION

So, slavery might have been was everyone was arguing about, but was it was westward expansion that turned that argument into a war?   It seems hard to imagine someone like John Brown peacefully protesting, but it's also hard to think of a reason why Kansas would have gotten its bloody nickname if it White Americans were not moving west to begin with.

What do you think?   Did westward expansion cause the Civil War?

教的英雄。这不会是最后的美国人会听到约翰·布朗的话。他将于 1859 年再次在哈珀小轮上成为全国头条新闻。

劳伦斯袋和 Pottawatomie Creek 大屠杀在堪萨斯州进行了残酷的游击战争。到 1856 年底，将有 200 多人被冷血杀死。财产损失达数百万美元。联邦部队被派来放下战斗，但是他们太少而没有太大的影响。堪萨斯州是五年后吞没全国血腥灾难的小规模前奏。

结论

所以，每个人都在争论奴隶制呢，但西方的扩张却把这个争论变成了一场战争呢？似乎很难想像有人像约翰·布朗（John Brown）和平地抗议，但如果白人不开始西方开始，堪萨斯就会很难想出堪称堪称血腥绰号的原因。

你怎么看？西方扩张导致内战？

Listen to Daniel Webster's
"Liberty and Union" Speech

PEOPLE AND GROUPS

Border Ruffians: A nickname given to a group of pro-slavery men who went to Kansas to try to terrorize the people there who were opposed to slavery.

Daniel Webster: Senator from Massachusetts. He was opposed to slavery but more than anything worked to preserve the Union and prevent Southern secession. Along with Henry Clay and John C. Calhoun he helped broker the Compromise of 1850.

Free Soil Party: A political party that existed during the 1850s. They believed that slavery should not be permitted in the territories of the West saying, "Free Men on Free Soil." Most Free Soilers eventually joined the Republican Party.

Henry Clay: Congressman from Kentucky who ran many times but never won the presidency. He is remembered as one of the three great dealmakers of the early 1800s who helped prevent civil war over slavery by negotiating the Missouri Compromise and the Compromise of 1850.

John Brown: A fierce abolitionist who moved to Kansas with his family. He led the Pottawatomie Creek Massacre and later led an attack on the federal arsenal at Harper's Ferry in the hope of leading a slave rebellion that would bring about the end of slavery. He was hated by Southerners but became a martyr for the abolitionist cause.

John C. Calhoun: Senator from South Carolina. In the decades before the Civil War he was the strongest voice for states' rights and defender of slavery. Along with Henry Clay and Daniel Webster he helped broker the Compromise of 1850.

Republican Party: A political party founded in the 1850s which initially opposed the expansion of slavery into the territories of the West. Abraham Lincoln was the first Republican president. Eventually the party worked to end slavery altogether.

Stephen Douglas: Senator from Illinois. He was opposed to slavery but wanted to preserve the Union. He believed that the best way was to let the people of each new state decide for themselves if slavery would be permitted. This idea, popular sovereignty is most strongly associated with Douglas.

KEY CONCEPTS

Popular Sovereignty: The idea that the residents of each territory should decide for themselves if they would join the Union as a free or slave state. Stephen Douglas supported this idea and it was the heart of the Kansas-Nebraska Act.

Secession: When a state or group of states leaves separates themselves from the country to form a new nation.

Slave Power: A phrase Northerners used to describe the political power Southern states had in Congress.

人与团

边界人士：给一群去过堪萨斯州的奴隶制奴隶的昵称。 他们试图恐吓那些反对奴隶制的人。

丹尼尔·韦伯斯特：来自马萨诸塞州的参议员。他反对奴隶制，但更多的是维护联盟，防止南方分裂。随着亨利·克莱（John Henry Clay）和约翰·卡尔霍恩（John C. Calhoun），他帮助经纪人兑现了 1850 年的妥协。

自由土党：19 世纪 50 年代存在的政党。他们认为，西方领土不应该允许奴隶制说"自由人自由土"，大多数自由土最终加入共和党。

亨利·克莱（Henry Clay）：来自肯塔基州的议员，他曾经担任过许多次，但从未赢得总统职务。他被认为是 19 世纪初三个伟大的交易者之一，他们通过谈判密苏里妥协和 1850 年的妥协来帮助防止内战。

约翰·布朗：一个与家人一起搬到堪萨斯州的一个激烈的废除死刑的人。他领导了 Pottawatomie Creek 大屠杀，随后在哈珀小轮对联邦军火库进行了攻击，希望能够引起奴隶叛乱，从而导致奴隶制的结束。他被南方人讨厌，却成了废除死刑事业的烈士。

约翰·卡尔霍恩：来自南卡罗来纳州的参议员。在内战前的几十年，他是国家权力和捍卫奴隶制的最强烈的声音。随着亨利·克莱（Daniel Henry Clay）和丹尼尔·韦伯斯特（Daniel Webster），他帮助经纪人进行 1850 年的妥协

共和党：成立于 19 世纪 50 年代的一个政党，最初反对将奴隶制扩大到西方领土。亚伯拉罕·林肯是第一位共和党总统。最终，党一直努力结束奴隶制。

斯蒂芬·道格拉斯：来自伊利诺伊州的参议员。他反对奴隶制，但希望维护联盟。他认为，最好的办法是让每个新国家的人民自愿决定是否允许奴隶制。这个想法，民主主义与道格拉斯最相关。

关键概念

人民主权：每个领土的居民如果自愿参与联盟是一个自由或奴隶国家的想法，就应该自己决定。斯蒂芬·道格拉斯支持这一想法，这是"堪萨斯－内布拉斯加州法"的核心。

分裂国家：一个国家或一群国家离开国家，形成一个新的国家。

奴隶权力：一个北方人用来描述南方各国在国会的政治权力。

2 **DID WESTWARD EXPANSION CAUSE THE CIVIL WAR?**

WAS THE
CIVIL WAR
A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT
FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF
SLAVERY?

LAWS

Kansas-Nebraska Act: A law that said that when the new states of Kansas and Nebraska joined the Union, the people of those states of vote to decide if they would be slave states or free states. The law proposed by Stephen Douglass and embraced his idea of popular sovereignty as a way to avoid a political fight in Congress.

Missouri Compromise: An agreement brokered by Henry Clay in 1820 to maintain the balance of slave and free states in the Senate. Missouri entered the Union as a slave state and Maine as a free state.

Wilmot Proviso: An addition to the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo that ended the Mexican American War proposed by David Wilmot. It stated that slavery would not be permitted in the new territories taken from Mexico, but was not adopted.

法律

堪萨斯 - 内布拉斯加州法案：一项法律，即当堪萨斯州和内布拉斯加州新加入联盟时，这些投票国家的人民决定是否将成为奴隶国家或自由州。斯蒂芬·道格拉斯提出的法律，接受了他对民主主义的看法，作为避免国会政治斗争的一种方式。

密苏里妥协：亨利·克莱（Henry Clay）在 1820 年代理的协议，以维护参议院的奴隶和自由州的平衡。密苏里州作为奴隶国和缅因州作为自由州进入联盟。

Wilmot Proviso：除了由 David Wilmot 提出的结束墨西哥美国战争的 Guadalupe Hidalgo 条约的补充。它指出，从墨西哥采取的新领土不得允许奴隶制，但未获通过。

LOCATIONS

36th Parallel: The line of latitude that was the dividing line between the free and slave states of the west. The Missouri Compromise had banned slavery north of the line, but the Compromise of 1850 ended that ban by allowing Missouri to become a slave state. The line is the southern border of Missouri.

地点

第 36 平行线：西方自由和奴隶状态之间的分界线。密苏里妥协已经禁止了奴隶制，但是 1850 年的妥协却通过允许密苏里州成为奴隶而结束了禁令。这条线是密苏里州的南部边界。

EVENTS

Bleeding Kansas: The name given to the time period of fighting between pro and anti-slavery forces in Kansas before it was admitted as a state.

Pottawatomie Creek Massacre: An attack by John Brown and his abolitionist followers on the town of Pottawatomie Creek, Kansas. They killed five people in revenge for the Sack of Lawrence. The events were part of the era known as Bleeding Kansas.

Sack of Lawrence: The town of Lawrence, Kansas was the center of the anti-slavery movement in that territory. In 1856 a group of pro-slavery men attacked and burned the town. The event was part of the era known as Bleeding Kansas.

活动

出血堪萨斯州：堪萨斯州被接纳为国家之前在堪萨斯州的亲属和反奴役部队之间作战的时期。

Pottawatomie Creek 大屠杀：堪萨斯州 Pottawatomie Creek 镇的约翰·布朗和他的废奴主义者的攻击。他们杀了五个人复仇劳伦斯报复。这些事件是被称为渗血堪萨斯的时代的一部分。

劳伦斯袋：堪萨斯州劳伦斯镇是该地区反奴役运动的中心。 1856 年，一群亲奴隶袭击和烧毁了这个城镇。事件是被称为流血堪萨斯的时代的一部分。

3 COULD AMERICAN LEADERS HAVE PREVENTED THE CIVIL WAR?

WAS THE CIVIL WAR A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF SLAVERY?

INTRODUCTION

For generations American leaders had dealt with the question of slavery without resorting to war. The Founding Fathers found a way to deal with it – the 3/5 Compromise, and Henry Clay, John C. Calhoun, and Daniel Webster had negotiated the Missouri Compromise and Compromise of 1850 to prevent war.

There were undoubtedly great leaders in the 1850s as well. Stephen Douglas, Henry Ward Beecher, William Lloyd Garrison and Frederick Douglas were all well respected voices of the day. But what made them different from the leaders of the past? Was it them, or had times changed? Could Clay, Calhoun and Webster have succeeded in the 1850s?

Then there's Abraham Lincoln, elected president in 1860. We regard him as one of our greatest presidents, but it was his election that prompted the Southern states to secede. He tried to convince the leaders of the South to give him a chance, but to no avail. And when they seceded he decided to go to war to prevent them from forming their own nation. Could he have done things differently to avoid war? Should he have just let them leave?

What do you think? Could American leaders have prevented the Civil War?

介绍

几代美国领导人处理奴隶制问题，而不诉诸战争。创始人找到了一个办法来处理它－3/5 妥协，亨利·克莱，约翰·卡尔霍恩和丹尼尔·韦伯斯特（Daniel Webster）谈判了1850年的密苏里妥协和妥协，以防止战争。

在 20 世纪 50 年代，无疑是伟大的领袖。史蒂芬·道格拉斯，亨利·沃德·贝切尔，威廉·劳埃德·加里森和弗雷德里克·道格拉斯都是当天很受尊敬的声音。但是什么使他们与过去的领导人不同？是他们还是有时间改变？可以粘土，卡尔霍恩和韦伯斯特在十九世纪五十年代成功了吗？

那么 1860 年当选总统是亚伯拉罕·林肯，我们认为他是我们最伟大的总统之一，但他当选是促使南方国家分裂。他试图说服南方领导人给他一个机会，但没有成功。当他们分手时，他决定去战争，阻止他们组建自己的国家。他可以做不同的事情来避免战争吗？他应该让他们离开吗？

你怎么看？美国领导人可以阻止内战吗？

3 **COULD AMERICAN LEADERS HAVE PREVENTED THE CIVIL WAR?**

WAS THE
CIVIL WAR
A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT
FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF
SLAVERY?

THE FUGITIVE SLAVE ACT

By 1843, several hundred slaves a year were successfully escaping to the North along the routes of the Underground Railroad, making slavery untenable in the border states. The Fugitive Slave Act of 1793 required the return of runaway slaves by requiring authorities in free states to return fugitive slaves to their masters. However, many Northern states found ways to circumvent the Fugitive Slave Act. Some jurisdictions passed "personal liberty laws," which mandated a jury trial before alleged fugitive slaves could be moved. Others forbade the use of local jails or the assistance of state officials in the arrest or return of alleged fugitive slaves. In some cases, juries refused to convict individuals who had been indicted under federal law.

The Missouri Supreme Court held that voluntary transportation of slaves into free states, with the intent of their residing there permanently or definitely, automatically made them free, whereas the Fugitive Slave Act dealt with slaves who went into free states without their master's consent. Furthermore, the U.S. Supreme Court ruled in Prigg v. Pennsylvania (1842) that states did not have to offer aid in the hunting or recapture of slaves, which greatly weakened the law of 1793. These and other Northern attempts to sidestep the 1793 legislation agitated the South, which sought stronger federal provisions for returning slave runaways.

In response to the weakening of the original fugitive slave law, the **Fugitive Slave Act** of 1850 made any federal marshal or other official who did not arrest an alleged runaway slave liable to a fine of $1,000. In addition, officers who captured a fugitive slave were entitled to a bonus or promotion for their work, and any person aiding a runaway slave by providing food or shelter was subject to a six-month imprisonment and a $1,000 fine. Law-enforcement officials everywhere now had greater incentive to arrest anyone suspected of being a runaway slave, and sympathizers had much more to risk in aiding those seeking freedom. Slave owners only needed to supply an affidavit to a federal marshal to claim that a slave had run away. The suspected runaway could not ask for a jury trial or testify on his or her own behalf. As a result, many free black people were accused of running away and were forced into slavery.

富裕的奴隶行为

到 1843 年，每年有几百个奴隶沿着地下铁路线路顺利逃往北部，使边界国家的奴隶制变得站不住脚。1793 年的"逃犯奴隶法"要求逃离奴隶的返回，要求自由州的当局将逃犯的奴隶归还给他们的主人。然而，许多北方国家却找到了规避"逃犯奴隶法"的方法。一些司法管辖区通过了"个人自由法"，该法规规定陪审团在被指控的逃犯被移走之前进行审判。其他人则禁止使用本地监狱或国家官员协助逮捕或归还被指控的逃犯。在某些情况下，陪审团拒绝定罪根据联邦法律被起诉的个人。

密苏里最高法院认为，自愿向自由国家运送奴隶，意图永久或绝对地居住在这里，自动使他们自由，而"逃犯奴隶法"则处理未经大师同意进入自由州的奴隶。此外，美国最高法院在 Prigg 诉宾夕法尼亚州（1842 年）裁定，各州不必为狩猎或夺回奴隶提供援助，这大大削弱了 1793 年的法律。这些和其他北方企图回避 1793 年的立法激动南部，寻求强大的联邦规定返回奴隶逃亡。

为了回应原来的逃犯奴隶法的削弱，1850 年的"逃犯奴隶法"规定，任何联邦元帅或其他官员都不会逮捕涉嫌逃亡的奴隶，可以处以罚款 $ 1,000。此外，捕获逃犯的官员有权获得奖金或晋升他们的工作，任何通过提供食物或住所协助失踪的奴隶的人都被判处六个月的监禁和一千一千美元的罚款。所有地方的执法官员现在有更大的动机来逮捕任何涉嫌是一个失踪的奴隶的人，同情者还有更多的风险来帮助那些寻求自由的人。奴隶主只需要向联邦元帅提供誓章，声称奴隶已经逃跑了。怀疑失踪者不能要求陪审团审判或自己作证。结果，许多自由黑人被指控逃跑，被迫陷入奴隶制。

The Fugitive Slave Act was met with violent protest in the North. This anger stemmed less from the fact that slavery existed than from Northern fury at being coerced into protecting the institution of Southern slavery. Moderate abolitionists were faced with the choice of defying what they believed to be an unjust law or breaking with their own consciences and beliefs, and many became radical antislavery proponents as a result. Many Northerners viewed the 1850 Fugitive Slave Act as evidence that the South was conspiring to spread slavery through federal coercion and force regardless of the will of Northern voters. In many Northern towns, slave catchers were attacked, and mobs set free captured fugitives. Two prominent instances in which abolitionists set free captured fugitives include John McHenry in Syracuse, New York, in 1851, and Shadrach Minkins in Boston of the same year.

THE DRED SCOTT DECISION

For abolitionists, helping runaway slaves escape was one thing, but the idea that slavery might be permitted anywhere in the United States, even within the North was terrifying. What if a slave owner brought a slave into the North? Would that person still be a slave?   What did the Constitution say on this subject? This question was raised in 1857 before the Supreme Court in case of **Dred Scott v. Sanford**. **Dred Scott** was a slave of an army surgeon, John Emerson. Scott had been taken from Missouri to posts in Illinois and what is now Minnesota for several years in the 1830s, before returning to Missouri. The Missouri Compromise of 1820 had declared the area including Minnesota free. In 1846, Scott sued for his freedom on the grounds that he had lived in a free state and a free territory for a prolonged period of time. Finally, after eleven years, his case reached the Supreme Court. At stake were answers to critical questions, including slavery in the territories and citizenship of African-Americans. The verdict was a bombshell.

The Court ruled that Scott's "sojourn" of two years to Illinois and the Northwest Territory did not make him free once he returned to Missouri.

The Court further ruled that as a black man Scott was excluded from United States citizenship and could not, therefore, bring suit. According to the opinion of the Court, African-Americans had not been part of the sovereign people who made the Constitution.

The Court also ruled that Congress never had the right to prohibit slavery in any territory. Any ban on slavery was a violation of the

"逃犯奴隶法"在北方遇到暴力抗议。这种愤怒的原因不在于奴隶制存在而不是从北方愤怒中被强制保护南方奴隶制的事实。中度废除死刑的人面临着蔑视他们认为是不公正的法律或者打破自己的良知和信仰的选择，许多人成为激进的反对者支持者。许多北方人认为1850年"逃犯奴隶法"是南方阴谋通过联邦强制和强制传播奴隶制的证据，不论北方选民的意志如何。在许多北部城镇，奴隶捕手遭到袭击，暴徒设置了自由捕获的逃犯。废除奴隶制的自由俘获逃犯的两个突出例子包括约翰·麦克亨利（John McHenry），1851年在纽约的雪城，以及同年的波士顿的沙德拉赫·明金斯（Shadrach Minkins）。

干草决定

对于废奴主义者来说，帮助失控的奴隶逃脱是一回事，但是在美国甚至在北方的任何地方，奴隶制的想法都是可怕的。奴隶主把奴隶带到北方怎么办？那个人还会是奴隶吗？宪法对这个问题有什么看法？这个问题在 1857 年被提交给最高法院的情况下，Dred Scott v。Sanford。德雷斯特·斯科特（Dred Scott）是一名陆军外科医生约翰·艾默生的奴隶。斯科特已经从密苏里州到伊利诺伊州的职位，现在的明尼苏达州在几十年代已经回到了密苏里州。 1820 年的密苏里州妥协宣布了包括明尼苏达州在内的地区。 1846 年，斯科特因为自由而长期生活在一个自由的国家和一个自由的领土上，为自由而起诉。最后，十一年后，他的案件到达最高法院。关键问题是关键问题的答案，包括领土上的奴隶制和非洲裔美国人的公民身份。判决是一个炸弹。

法院裁定，斯科特对伊利诺伊州和西北地区的两年"逗留"并没有让他重新回到密苏里州。

法院进一步裁定，作为黑人，斯科特被排除在美国公民身份之外，因此不能提起诉讼。根据法院的意见，非洲裔美国人不是组织宪法的主权国家的一部分。

法院还裁定，国会从未有权在任何领土上禁止奴隶制。任何禁止奴隶制都是违反"第五修正案"的，违反了正当法律程序的原则，禁止拒绝产权。

Fifth Amendment, which prohibited denying property rights without due process of law.

The Missouri Compromise was therefore unconstitutional.

The Chief Justice of the United States was **Roger B. Taney**, a former slave owner, as were four other Southern justices on the Court. The two dissenting justices of the nine-member Court were the only Republicans. The North refused to accept a decision by a Court they felt was dominated by "Southern fire-eaters." Many Northerners, including Abraham Lincoln, felt that the next step would be for the Supreme Court to decide that no state could exclude slavery under the Constitution, regardless of their wishes or their laws.

Two of the three branches of government, the Congress and the President, had failed to resolve the issue. Now the Supreme Court rendered a decision that was only accepted in the Southern half of the country. Was the American experiment collapsing? The only remaining national political institution with both Northern and Southern strength was the Democratic Party, and it was now splitting at the seams. The fate of the Union looked hopeless.
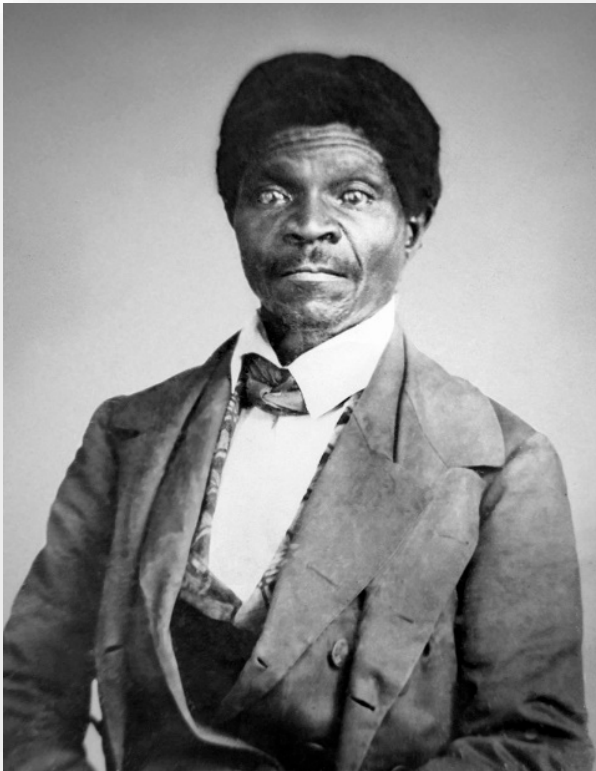
因此，密苏里州的妥协是违宪的。

美国首席大法官是前奴隶主 Roger B. Taney，以及法院的四名南部司法官。九人法院的两个不同意的法官是唯一的共和党人。北方拒绝接受法院的决定，他们认为是由"南方消防员"主宰的。许多北方人，包括亚伯拉罕·林肯，认为下一步将是最高法院决定，无论国家的意愿或法律如何，任何国家都不能排除"宪法"规定的奴隶制。

三个政府部门中的两个，国会和总统，都没有解决这个问题。现在最高法院作出了只在南半球接受的决定。美国的实验是否崩溃？北方和南方地区唯一剩下的国家政治机构是民主党，现在在接缝处分裂。联盟的命运看起来没有希望。

Primary Source: Photograph
A photograph of Dred Scott, taken around the time of his court case in 1857

主要来源：照片
1857 年，德雷斯特·斯科特（Dred Scott）拍摄的照片是他的案件

THE LINCOLN-DOUGLAS DEBATES

In 1858, as the country moved ever closer to disunion, two politicians from Illinois attracted the attention of a nation. From August 21 until October 15, Stephen Douglas battled Abraham Lincoln in face to face **debates** around the state. The prize they sought was a seat in the Senate. Lincoln challenged Douglas to a war of ideas. Douglas took the challenge. The debates were to be held at seven locations throughout Illinois. The fight was on and the nation was watching.

The spectators came from all over Illinois and nearby states by train, by canal-boat, by wagon, by buggy, and on horseback. They briefly swelled the populations of the towns that hosted the debates. The audiences participated by shouting questions, cheering the participants as if they were prizefighters, applauding and laughing. The debates attracted tens of thousands of voters and newspaper reporters from across the nation.

During the debates, Douglas still advocated **popular sovereignty** which maintained the right of the citizens of a territory to permit or prohibit slavery. It was, he said, a sacred right of self-government. Lincoln pointed out that Douglas's position directly challenged the Dred Scott decision, which decreed that the citizens of a territory had no such power.

In what became known as the **Freeport Doctrine**, Douglas replied that whatever the Supreme Court decided was not as important as the actions of the citizens. If a territory refused to have slavery, no laws, no Supreme Court ruling, would force them to permit it. This sentiment would be taken as betrayal to many Southern Democrats and would come back to haunt Douglas in his bid to become President in the election of 1860.

Time and time again, Lincoln made that point that "**a house divided against itself cannot stand**." Douglas refuted this by noting that the founders, "left each state perfectly free to do as it pleased on the subject." Lincoln felt that blacks were entitled to the rights enumerated in the Declaration of Independence, which include "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness." Douglas argued that the founders intended no such inclusion for blacks.

Neither Abraham Lincoln nor Stephen Douglas won a popular election that fall. Under rules governing Senate elections, voters cast their ballots for local legislators, who then choose a Senator. The Democrats won a majority of district contests and returned Douglas to Washington. But the nation saw a rising star in the defeated Lincoln. The entire drama that unfolded in Illinois would be played on

LINCOLN-DOUGLAS 辩论

1858 年，随着越来越多的国家越来越分歧，伊利诺伊州的两名政治家引起了一个国家的关注。从 8 月 21 日至 10 月 15 日，斯蒂芬·道格拉斯与亚伯拉罕·林肯（Abraham Lincoln）在国家面对面进行辩论。他们所要求的奖是参议院的一席位。林肯质疑道格拉斯的思想战争。道格拉斯接受了挑战。辩论将在伊利诺斯州的七个地点举行。战斗已经开始，国家正在观看。

观众来自伊利诺斯州和附近的各州火车，运河船，马车，越野车和马背。他们简短地煽动了主持辩论的城镇人口。观众参加了大声的问候，欢呼参加者，好像他们是战斗员，鼓掌和笑。这次辩论吸引了全国数以万计的选民和报社记者。

在辩论中，道格拉斯仍然主张维护一个领土公民有权允许或禁止奴隶制的人权主权。他说，是一个神圣的自治权。林肯指出，道格拉斯的立场直接挑战了德雷斯特·斯科特的决定，即一个领土的公民没有这样的权力。

道格拉斯在所谓的自由港学说中回答说，无论最高法院如何决定，并不像公民的行为那么重要。如果一个领土不服奴隶制，任何一个法律，也不是最高法院的裁决，都会迫使他们允许。这种观点将被视为对许多南方民主人士的背叛，并将回到道格拉斯，以求 1860 年当选总统。

林肯一再提到，"一个拆毁自己的房子不能忍受"。道格拉斯驳斥了这一点，指出创始人"让每个国家完全自由地对待这个问题感到高兴"。林肯认为黑人有权享有"独立宣言"所列举的权利，其中包括"生命，自由和追求幸福"。道格拉斯认为，创始人不希望黑人参与其中。

亚伯拉罕·林肯和斯蒂芬·道格拉斯都没有赢得大选。根据参议院选举的规则，选民向当地议员投票，然后选举参议员。民主党赢得了大部分的地区比赛，并将道格拉斯送回华盛顿。但是，这个国家在被击败的林肯里看到了一颗新星。在伊朗伊斯兰

the national stage only two years later in the 1860 presidential election.

CIVILITY BREAKS DOWN IN CONGRESS

Senator **Charles Sumner** of Massachusetts was an avowed Abolitionist and leader of the Republican Party. After the sack of Lawrence, on May 21, 1856, he gave a bitter speech in the Senate called "the crime against Kansas." He blasted the "murderous robbers from Missouri," calling them "hirelings, picked from the drunken spew and vomit of an uneasy civilization." Part of this oratory was a bitter, personal tirade against South Carolina's Senator Andrew Butler. Sumner declared Butler an imbecile and said, "Senator Butler has chosen a mistress. I mean the harlot, slavery." During the speech, Stephen Douglas leaned over to a colleague and said, "that damn fool will get himself killed by some other damn fool." The speech went on for two days.

Representative **Preston Brooks** of South Carolina thought Sumner went too far. Southerners in the nineteenth century were raised to live by an unwritten code of honor. Defending the reputation of one's family was at the top of the list. A distant cousin of Senator Butler, Brooks decided to teach Charles Sumner a lesson he would not soon forget. Two days after the end of Sumner's speech, Brooks entered the Senate chamber where Sumner was working at his desk. He flatly told Sumner, "You've libeled my state and slandered my white-haired old relative, Senator Butler, and I've come to punish you for it." Brooks proceeded to beat Sumner over the head repeatedly with a gold-tipped cane. The cane shattered as Brooks rained blow after blow on the hapless Sumner, but Brooks was not deterred. Only after being physically restrained by others did Brooks end the pummeling.

SOUTHERN CHIVALRY — ARGUMENT versus CLUB'S.
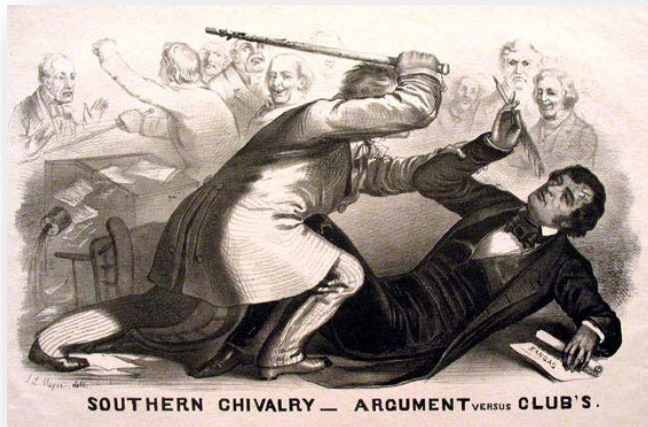
诺展览的整个戏剧将仅在两年后的 1860 年总统选举中在国家舞台上演出。

大会中的公民意识突破

马萨诸塞州参议员查尔斯·萨姆纳（Charles Sumner）是共和党的一名被公认的废除党派和领袖。在劳伦斯解雇后，1856 年 5 月 21 日，他在参议院发表了一个叫做"堪萨斯罪行"的演讲。他炸毁了"密苏里州的谋杀凶手"，称他们是"雇佣兵，从醉酒的呕吐中挑选出来，呕吐不安的文明"。这个演说的一部分是对南卡罗来纳州参议员安德鲁·巴特勒的一个苦涩的个人诉讼。萨姆纳宣称巴特勒是一个不礼貌的人，并说："巴特勒参议员选了一个情妇，我的意思是妓女，奴隶制。演讲中，斯蒂芬·道格拉斯斜倚一位同事说："那个笨蛋傻子会被别的傻瓜杀死。"演讲持续了两天。

南卡罗来纳州的代表普雷斯顿布鲁克斯认为苏姆纳太过分了。十九世纪的南方人被提出来以不成文的荣誉代码来生活。捍卫家人的声誉是榜首。参议员巴特勒的一位遥远的表弟，布鲁克斯决定教授查尔斯·萨姆纳一课，他不会忘记。在 Sumner 演讲结束两天之后，布鲁克斯进入参议院的房间，Sumner 正在办公室工作。他平淡地告诉萨姆纳，"你们诽谤我的国家，诽谤了我白发的老亲戚，参议员巴特勒，我来惩罚你们。"布鲁克斯继续用金手杖多次击败了萨姆纳。随着布鲁克斯在不幸的萨姆纳打了一阵阵雨后，手杖被打破了，但布鲁克斯并没有被阻止。只有在被别人的身体束缚之后，布鲁克斯就结束了冥想。

Primary Source: Editorial Cartoon

A lithograph cartoon published in 1855 depicting Preston Brooks' attack on Charles Sumner in the Senate chamber.

主要来源：编辑卡通

在 1855 年出版的一幅平版印刷画，描绘了普雷斯顿布鲁克斯在参议院议院对查尔斯·萨姆纳的袭击。

Charles Sumner spent years recovering from the attack and Northerners were incensed. The House of Representatives voted to expel Brooks, but it could not amass the votes to do so. Brooks was levied a $300 fine for the assault. He resigned and returned home to South Carolina, seeking the approval of his actions there. South Carolina held events in his honor and reelected him to his House seat. Replacement canes were sent to Brooks from all over the South. This response outraged Northern moderates even more than the caning itself.

As for poor Charles Sumner, the physical and psychological injuries from the caning kept him away from the Senate for most of the next several years. The voters of Massachusetts also reelected him and let his seat sit vacant during his absence as a reminder of Southern brutality. The violence from Kansas had spilled over into the national legislature.

JOHN BROWN'S RAID

On October 16, 1859, John Brown led a small army of 18 men into the small town of **Harper's Ferry**, Virginia. His plan was to instigate a major slave rebellion in the South. He would seize the arms and ammunition in the federal arsenal, arm slaves in the area and move South along the Appalachian Mountains, attracting slaves to his cause. He had no rations. He had no escape route. His plan was doomed from the very beginning. But it did succeed to deepen the divide between the North and South.

John Brown and his cohorts marched into an unsuspecting Harper's Ferry and seized the federal complex with little resistance. It consisted of an armory, arsenal, and engine house. He then sent a patrol out into the country to contact slaves, collected several hostages, including the great grandnephew of George Washington, and sat down to wait. The slaves did not rise to his support, but local citizens and militia surrounded him, exchanging gunfire, killing two townspeople and eight of Brown's company. Troops under the command of Lieutenant Colonel **Robert E. Lee** arrived from Washington to arrest Brown. They stormed the engine house, where Brown had withdrawn, captured him and members of his group, and turned them over to Virginia authorities to be tried for treason. He was quickly tried and sentenced to hang on December 2, 1859.

Brown's strange effort to start a rebellion was over less than 36 hours after it started; however, the consequences of his raid would last far longer. In the North, his raid was greeted by many with widespread admiration. While they recognized the raid itself was the act of a madman, some Northerners admired his zeal and courage. Church

査尔斯·萨姆纳（Charles Sumner）从袭击中恢复了多年，北方人感到愤怒。众议院议员投票驱逐布鲁克斯，但不能积极投票。布鲁克斯被罚款 300 美元的攻击。他辞职并返回南卡罗来纳州，寻求批准他在那里的行动。南卡罗来纳州以他的名义举行了活动，并重新选举了他到他的议席。更换的手杖从南部发往布鲁克斯。这种反应令北方温和派甚至超过了甘蔗本身。

对于可怜的查尔斯·萨姆纳来说，在接下来的几年里大部分时间里，甘蔗的身体和心理伤害使他远离参议院。马萨诸塞州的选民也重新选举了他，让他的席位在缺席时空缺，提醒南方野蛮。堪萨斯州的暴力事件已经蔓延到国家立法机构。

约翰·布朗的 RAID

1859 年 10 月 16 日，约翰·布朗带领一群 18 人的小军进入弗吉尼亚州的哈珀小轮小镇。他的计划是在南方煽动一场重大的奴隶叛乱。他将在联邦武器库中抓住武器和弹药，在该地区武装奴隶，沿着阿巴拉契亚山脉向南移动，吸引奴隶到他的事业。他没有口粮。他没有逃跑路线。他的计划从一开始就注定了失败。但它确实成功地加深了南北之间的鸿沟。

约翰·布朗和他的队伍进入了一个毫无戒心的哈珀小轮，并以很少的阻力夺取了联邦政府。它包括一个军械库，武器库和发动机房。随后，他派出一队巡逻队与该国接洽，收集了几名人质，包括乔治华盛顿的爷爷，坐下来等待。奴隶没有得到他的支持，但当地公民和民兵围在他身边，交火，杀死了两个城镇居民和布朗的八个公司。来自华盛顿的中尉罗伯特·李中校指挥的部队逮捕了布朗。他们袭击了布朗退出的发动机房，抓住了他和他的集团成员，并把他们交给了弗吉尼亚州当局，以叛国为由。他于 1859 年 12 月 2 日被迅速审判并被判死刑。

布朗奇怪的开始叛乱的努力是在不到 36 个小时之后开始的，然而，他的袭击的后果会持续更久。在北方，他的袭击被许多人广泛的钦佩。虽然他们认识到袭击本身就是一个疯子的行为，但一些北方人羡慕他的热忱和勇气。执教当天的教堂钟声响起，

3 **COULD AMERICAN LEADERS HAVE PREVENTED THE CIVIL WAR?**

WAS THE
CIVIL WAR
A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT
FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF
SLAVERY?

bells pealed on the day of his execution and songs and paintings were created in his honor. Brown was turned into an instant **martyr**. Ralph Waldo Emerson predicted that Brown would make "the gallows as glorious as the cross." The majority of Northern newspapers did, however, denounce the raid. The Republican Party adopted a specific plank condemning John Brown and his ill-fated plan. But that was not what the South saw.

Southerners were shocked and outraged. How could anyone be sympathetic to a fanatic who destroyed their property and threatened their very lives? How could they live under a government whose citizens regarded John Brown as a martyr? Southern newspapers labeled the entire North as John Brown sympathizers. Southern politicians blamed the Republican Party and falsely claimed that Abraham Lincoln supported Brown's intentions. Moderate voices supporting compromise on both sides grew silent amid the gathering storm. In this climate of fear and hostility, the election year of 1860 opened ominously. The election of Abraham Lincoln became unthinkable to many in the South.

THE ELECTION OF 1860

The Democrats met in Charleston, South Carolina, in April 1860 to select their candidate for President in the upcoming election. It was turmoil. Northern democrats felt that Stephen Douglas had the best chance to defeat the "Black Republicans." Although an ardent supporter of slavery, Southern Democrats considered Douglas a traitor because of his support of popular sovereignty, permitting territories to choose not to have slavery. Southern democrats stormed out of the convention, without choosing a candidate. Six weeks later, the Northern Democrats chose Douglas, while at a separate convention the Southern Democrats nominated then Vice-President John C Breckenridge.

The Republicans met in Chicago that May and recognized that the Democrat's turmoil actually gave them a chance to take the election. They needed to select a candidate who could carry the North and win a majority of the Electoral College. To do that, the Republicans needed someone who could carry New Jersey, Illinois, Indiana and Pennsylvania — four important states that remained uncertain. There were plenty of potential candidates, but in the end Abraham Lincoln had emerged as the best choice. Lincoln had become the symbol of the frontier, hard work, the self-made man and the American dream. His debates with Douglas had made him a national figure and the publication of those debates in early 1860 made him even better known. After the third ballot, he had the nomination for President.

他的荣幸创作了歌曲和绘画。布朗变成了一个瞬间的烈士。艾默生预言，布朗将把"绞刑架像十字架一样光荣"。北方的大多数报纸呢呢就是谴责这次袭击。共和党通过了一个谴责约翰·布朗和他的命运计划的具体方式。但这不是南方所看到的。

南方人感到震惊和愤慨。任何人都可以同情一个摧毁财产并威胁生命的狂热分子？他们怎么能生活在公民把约翰·布朗视为烈士的政府呢？南方报纸将整个北方标记为约翰·布朗的同情者。南方政客指责共和党，并虚假地声称亚伯拉罕·林肯支持布朗的意图。在这场暴风雨中，双方妥协的温和声音均得到缓解。在这种恐惧和敌对的气氛中，1860 年的选举年份不祥。亚伯拉罕·林肯的选举对南方的许多人来说是不可想象的。

选举 1860 年

1860 年 4 月，民主党人在南卡罗来纳州查尔斯顿见面，在即将举行的选举中选出候选人。这是动乱。北方民主派人士认为，斯蒂芬·道格拉斯有最大的机会打败"黑人共和党人"。虽然南非民主人士对奴隶制的热切支持者认为道格拉斯是叛国者，因为他支持人民主权，允许领土选择不进行奴隶制。南方民主人士没有选择候选人，而是摆脱了公约。六周后，北方民主党人选择了道格拉斯，而在另一个公约中，南方民主党提名当时的副总统约翰·布雷肯里奇。

共和党五月在芝加哥见面，认识到民主党的动乱实际上让他们有机会参加选举。他们需要选择一个可以携带北方并赢得选举团的多数的候选人。为了做到这一点，共和党人需要一个能够携带新泽西州，伊利诺伊州，印第安纳州和宾夕法尼亚州的四个重要国家仍然不确定的人。有很多潜在的候选人，但最后，亚伯拉罕·林肯已经成为最好的选择。林肯已成为边界，辛勤工作，自制人和美国梦的象征。他与道格拉斯的辩论使他成为一个全国人物，1860 年初出版的这些辩论使他更加了解。第三次投票后，他被提名为总统。

A number of aging politicians and distinguished citizens, calling themselves the **Constitutional Union Party**, nominated John Bell of Tennessee, a wealthy slaveholder as their candidate for President. These people were for moderation. They decided that the best way out of the present difficulties that faced the nation was to take no stand at all on the issues that divided the North and the South.

With four candidates in the field, Lincoln received only 40% of the popular vote and 180 electoral votes — enough to narrowly win the crowded election. This meant that 60% of the voters had selected someone other than Lincoln. With the results tallied, the question was, would the South accept the outcome? A few weeks after the election, South Carolina seceded from the Union.

SECESSION

The force of events moved very quickly upon the election of Lincoln. South Carolina acted first, calling for a convention to secede from the Union. State by state, conventions were held, and the **Confederacy** was formed.

Within three months of Lincoln's election, seven states had seceded from the Union. Just as Springfield, Illinois celebrated the election of its favorite son to the Presidency on November 7, so did Charleston, South Carolina, which did not cast a single vote for him. It knew that the election meant the formation of a new nation. In a reference to the protests against British rule in the 1770s, the Charleston Mercury wrote, "The tea has been thrown overboard, the revolution of 1860 has been initiated."

一些老龄化的政治家和尊贵的公民，称自己是宪法联盟党，提名了田纳西州的约翰·贝尔，一位富裕的奴隶主，担任总统候选人。这些人是温和的。他们认为，面对国家面临的困难，最好的办法就是在分解南北方面的问题上根本没有立场。

在现场有四名候选人，林肯只获得了 40％的民众投票和 180 票选票 - 足以狭隘地赢得拥挤的选举。这意味着 60％的选民都选择了林肯以外的人。结果很好，问题是，南方会接受结果吗？在选举后的几周内，南卡罗来纳州脱离了联盟。

分裂

林肯选举后，事态发生的速度非常快。南卡罗来纳州首先采取行动，要求脱离联盟进行公约。国家按国家举行公约，联邦成立。

在林肯当选的三个月内，有七个州脱离了联盟。正如伊利诺斯州斯普林菲尔德 11 月 7 日庆祝其最喜欢的儿子当选总统府一样，南卡罗来纳州的查尔斯顿也没有为他投一票。它知道选举意味着组建一个新国家。查尔斯顿水星在提及 17 世纪 70 年代英国统治的抗议时写道："茶被抛在脑后，1860 年的革命已经开始了。"
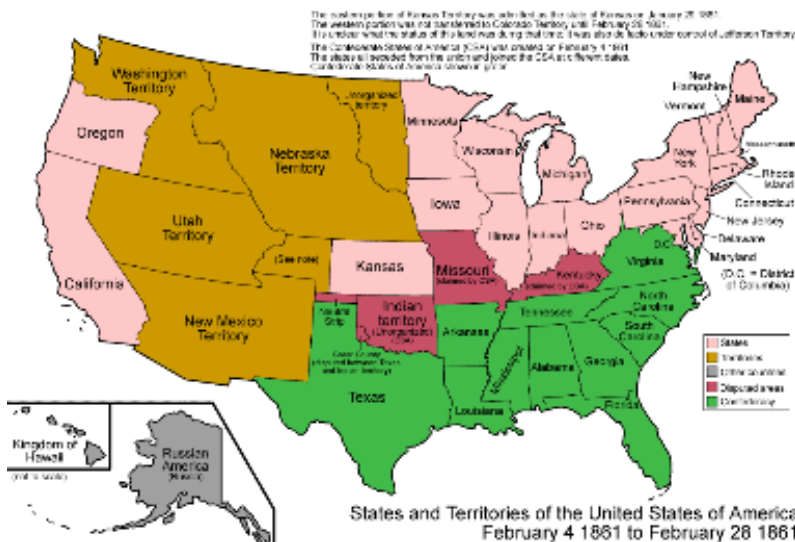
Secondary Source: Map

The United States and Confederate States of America in 1861.

次要资料来源：地图

美国和美国联邦在 1861 年。

States and Territories of the United States of America
February 4 1861 to February 28 1861

Within a few days, the two United States Senators from South Carolina submitted their resignations. On December 20, 1860, by a vote of 169-0, the South Carolina legislature enacted an "ordinance" that "the union now subsisting between South Carolina and other States, under the name of 'The United States of America,' is hereby dissolved." South Carolina's action resulted in conventions in other Southern states. Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas all left the Union by February 1. On February 4, delegates from all these states except Texas met in Montgomery, Alabama, to create and staff a government called the Confederate States of America. They elected President **Jefferson Davis**. The gauntlet was thrown. How would the North respond?

A few last ditch efforts were made to end the crisis through Constitutional amendment. Senator James Henry Crittenden proposed to amend the Constitution to extend the old 36°30' line to the Pacific. All territory north of the line would be forever free, and all territory south of the line would receive federal protection for slavery. Republicans refused to support the measure.

On March 2, 1861, two days before Lincoln's inauguration, the 36th Congress passed the Corwin Amendment and submitted it to the states for ratification as an amendment to the Constitution. Senator William H. Seward of New York introduced the amendment in the Senate and Representative Thomas Corwin of Ohio introduced it in the House of Representatives. The text of the proposed amendment was:

"No amendment shall be made to the Constitution which will authorize or give to Congress the power to abolish or interfere, within any State, with the domestic institutions thereof, including that of persons held to labor or service by the laws of said State."

Like the rest of the language in the Constitution prior to the Civil War, the proposed amendment never uses the word "slavery," instead employing the euphemisms "domestic institutions" and "persons held to labor or service." The proposed amendment was designed to reassure the seceding slave states that the federal government would not interfere with their "peculiar institution." If it had passed, it would have rendered unconstitutional any subsequent amendments restricting slavery, such as the 13th Amendment, which outlawed slavery throughout the nation. The Corwin Amendment passed the state legislatures in Ohio, Kentucky, Rhode Island and Maryland. Even Lincoln's own state of Illinois passed it, though the lawmakers who voted for it in Illinois were not actually the elected legislators but were delegates to a state constitutional convention.

在几天之内，来自南卡罗来纳州的两位美国参议员提交了辞呈。 1860 年 12 月 20 日，南卡罗来纳州立法机构以 169-0 的表决通过了一项"法令"，即"现在以"美利坚合众国"的名义在南卡罗来纳和其他国家之间存在的工会，因此溶解。"南卡罗来纳州的行动导致南部其他州的公约。密西西比州，佛罗里达州，阿拉巴马州，格鲁吉亚，路易斯安那州和德克萨斯州都在 2 月 1 日之前离开联盟。2 月 4 日，德克萨斯州以外所有这些州的代表在阿拉巴马州蒙哥马利举行会议，共同组建了一个名叫美联邦的政府。他们当选总统杰斐逊戴维斯。夕徒被扔了。北方怎么回应？

通过宪法修正案，最后一次努力结束危机。参议员詹姆斯·亨利·克里登提议修改"宪法"，将旧的 36° 30'线延伸到太平洋。该线以北的所有领土将永远是自由的，南线以南的所有领土都将获得联邦对奴隶制的保护。共和党人拒绝支持这一措施。

1861 年 3 月 2 日，林肯就职前两天，第 36 届国会通过了"科恩修正案"，并将其提交给各州批准，作为"宪法"修正案。纽约参议员威廉·西沃德（William H. Seward）介绍了参议院的修正案，俄亥俄州的代表托马斯·科温（Thomas Corwin）在众议院介绍了这一点。提出的修正案案文如下：

"宪法"不得修改，授权或给予国会在任何国家内其废除或干涉国内机构的权力，包括根据该国法律劳动或服务的人的权力。

与"内战"之前的"宪法"中的其余部分一样，拟议的修正案从不使用"奴隶制"一词，而是采用"国内机构"和"劳动或服务人员"的委婉语。拟议的修正旨在保证分裂的奴隶国家联邦政府不会干涉他们的"特殊机构"。如果已经过去，将对违反奴隶制的任何后来的修正案进行违宪，例如第十三修正案，该修正案在全国禁止奴隶制。科文修正案通过了俄亥俄州，肯塔基州，罗德岛州和马里兰州的州议会。即使林肯自己的伊利诺伊州也通过了这一点，尽管在伊利诺伊州投票的立法者并不是当选立法委员，而是代表国家宪法公约。

Lincoln supported the amendment, specifically mentioning it in his first inaugural address:

"I understand a proposed amendment to the Constitution — which amendment, however, I have not seen — has passed Congress, to the effect that the Federal Government shall never interfere with the domestic institutions of the States, including that of persons held to service ... holding such a provision to now be implied constitutional law, I have no objection to its being made express and irrevocable."

The amendment failed to get the required approval of 3/4 of all state legislatures for a constitutional amendment, largely because many of the Southern slave states had already seceded and did not vote on it.

What was the president doing during all this furor? Abraham Lincoln would not be inaugurated until March 4. James Buchanan presided over the exodus from the Union. Although he thought secession to be illegal, he found using the army in this case to be unconstitutional. Both regions awaited the arrival of President Lincoln and wondered anxiously what he would do.

LINCOLN'S FIRST INAUGURATION

Abraham Lincoln's first inaugural address was delivered on Monday, March 4, 1861, as part of his taking of the oath of office for his first term as the sixteenth President of the United States. The speech was primarily addressed to the people of the South, and was intended to succinctly state Lincoln's intended policies and desires.

Written in a spirit of reconciliation toward the seceded states, Lincoln's inaugural address touched on several topics: first, his pledge to "hold, occupy, and possess the property and places belonging to the government"—including Fort Sumter in South Carolina, which was still in federal hands; second, his argument that the Union was undissolvable, and thus that secession was impossible; and third, a promise that while he would never be the first to attack, any use of armed force against the United States would be regarded as rebellion, and met with force.

Lincoln denounced secession as anarchy, and explained that majority rule had to be balanced by constitutional restraints in the American system of republicanism, saying, "A majority held in restraint by constitutional checks and limitations, and always changing easily with deliberate changes of popular opinions and sentiments, is the only true sovereign of a free people."

Desperately wishing to avoid this terrible conflict, Lincoln ended with this impassioned plea:

林肯支持这项修正案，特别在第一次就职演说中提到：

"我理解宪法修正案的修正案，但是我没有看到，修正案已经通过了国会，因为联邦政府绝对不会干涉国内的国内机构，包括维权人员。﹒﹒这样的规定现在是隐含的宪法，我不反对被明示和不可撤销。"

修正案没有得到所有国家立法机关对宪法修正案的批准，主要是因为许多南方奴隶国家已经分裂而没有投票。

总统在这么多的愤怒中做了什么？亚伯拉罕·林肯不会在 3 月 4 日之前成立。詹姆斯·布坎南主持联盟的流亡。虽然他认为分裂是非法的，但他发现在这种情况下使用军队是违宪的。两个地区等待着林肯总统的到来，急切地想知道他会做什么。

林肯的第一任务

亚伯拉罕·林肯的第一次就职演说于 1861 年 3 月 4 日星期一交付，是他第一任任美国第十六任总统职务的一部分。演讲主要是向南方人民致意，旨在简明陈述林肯的政策和愿望。

林肯的就职演说以分离国家和解的精神写着，谈到了几个话题：第一，他承诺"持有，占有和拥有属于政府的财产和地方"，包括南卡罗来纳州的萨姆特堡，这是仍在联邦手中第二，他认为联盟是不可解决的，所以分裂是不可能的。第三，这是一个承诺，虽然他永远不会是第一个攻击，但是对美国的任何武力都将被视为叛乱，并且强行实施。

林肯谴责分裂为无政府状态，并解释说，大多数统治必须通过美国共和制统治的宪法制约来平衡，他说："多数人以宪法检查和限制为由克制，总是随着人民意见的故意改变而容易地改变，情绪是自由人民唯一真正的主权国家。"

林肯很希望避免这种可怕的冲突，林肯以这种慷慨的辩解结束：

"I am loath to close. We are not enemies, but friends. We must not be enemies. Though passion may have strained it must not break our bonds of affection. The mystic chords of memory, stretching from every battlefield and patriot grave to every living heart and hearthstone all over this broad land, will yet swell the chorus of the Union, when again touched, as surely they will be, by the **better angels of our nature**."

While much of the Northern press praised or at least accepted Lincoln's speech, the new Confederacy essentially met his inaugural address with contemptuous silence. The Charleston Mercury was an exception: it excoriated Lincoln's address as manifesting "insolence" and "brutality," and attacked the Union government as "a mobocratic empire." The speech also did not impress other states who were considering secession from the Union. Indeed, after Fort Sumter was attacked and Lincoln declared a formal State of Insurrection, four more states—Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee and Arkansas—seceded from the Union and joined the Confederacy.

Modern writers and historians generally consider the speech to be a masterpiece and one of the finest presidential inaugural addresses, with the final lines having earned particularly lasting renown in American culture. Literary and political analysts likewise have praised the speech's eloquent prose.

FORT SUMTER

It all began at Fort Sumter.

On December 20, 1860, South Carolina seceded from the Union. Five days later, 68 federal troops stationed in Charleston, South Carolina, withdrew to **Fort Sumter**, an island in Charleston Harbor. President Lincoln and the North considered the fort to be the property of the United States government. The people of South Carolina believed it belonged to the new Confederacy. Four months later, the first engagement of the Civil War took place on this disputed soil.

The commander at Fort Sumter, Major Robert Anderson, was a former slave owner who was nevertheless unquestionably loyal to the Union. With 6,000 South Carolina militia ringing the harbor, Anderson and his soldiers were cut off from reinforcements and resupplies. In January 1861, as one the last acts of his administration, President James Buchanan sent 200 soldiers and supplies on an unarmed merchant vessel, Star of the West, to reinforce Anderson. It quickly departed when South Carolina artillery started firing.

In February 1861, Jefferson Davis was inaugurated as the provisional president of the Confederate States of America, in Montgomery,

"我不愿意关闭，我们不是敌人，而是朋友，我们不能是敌人，虽然激情可能已经紧张，但绝不能打破我们的爱情，记忆的神秘和弦，从每个战场和爱国者坟墓伸展到每一个生活的心脏和炉石在这个广阔的土地上，仍然会膨胀联盟的合唱，再次感动，因为他们将是，我们的天性更好的天使。

虽然大部分北方新闻界赞扬或至少接受了林肯的讲话，但新联邦基本上以蔑视的沉默方式遇到了就职演说。查尔斯顿水星是一个例外：它揭示了林肯的地址，表现为"无礼"和"残暴"，并将联盟政府攻击为"一个莫名其妙的帝国"。演讲也没有打动其他正在考虑脱离联盟的国家。事实上，在萨姆特堡遭到袭击之后，林肯宣布正式的起义国家，还有另外四个州 - 弗吉尼亚州，北卡罗来纳州，田纳西州和阿肯色州 - 离开联盟，并加入了联邦。

现代作家和历史学家普遍认为这个演讲是杰作，也是最好的总统就职演说之一，最后一幕在美国文化中获得了非常久远的声望。文学和政治分析家也赞扬演讲雄辩的散文。

FORT SUMTER

一切都从萨姆特堡开始。

1860 年 12 月 20 日，南卡罗来纳州脱离联盟。五天后，驻扎在南卡罗来纳州查尔斯顿的 68 名联军部队撤回了查尔斯顿港的一个岛屿萨姆特堡。林肯总统和北方认为堡垒是美国政府的财产。南卡罗来纳州人民认为这属于新的联邦。四个月后，内战的第一次参与发生在这个有争议的土地上。

萨姆特堡的司令罗伯特·安德森小将是一位前奴隶主，他毫无疑问地忠于联盟。有 6000 名南卡罗莱纳州民兵对港口响起，安德森和他的士兵们被从加强和补给中切断。 1861 年 1 月，詹姆斯·布坎南总统作为其行政的最后一次行动，向一名没有武装的商船"西部之星"派出了 200 名士兵和物资，以加强安德森。当南卡罗来纳大炮开枪时，它很快就离开了。

1861 年 2 月，杰斐逊·戴维斯（Jefferson Davis）在阿拉巴马州蒙哥马利，成为美国联邦临时总统。

Alabama. On March 4, 1861, Abraham Lincoln took his oath of office as president of the Union in Washington, DC. The fate of Fort Sumter lay in the hands of these two leaders.

As weeks passed, pressure grew for Lincoln to take some action on Fort Sumter and to reunite the states. Lincoln thought of the Southern secession as "artificial." When Jefferson Davis sent a group of commissioners to Washington to negotiate for the transfer of Fort Sumter to South Carolina, they were promptly rebuffed.

Lincoln had a dilemma. Fort Sumter was running out of supplies, but an attack on the fort would appear as Northern aggression. States that still remained part of the Union (such as Virginia and North Carolina) might be driven into the secessionist camp. People at home and abroad might become sympathetic to the South. Yet Lincoln could not allow his troops to starve or surrender and risk showing considerable weakness.

At last he developed a plan. On April 6, Lincoln told the governor of South Carolina that he was going to send provisions to Fort Sumter. He would send no arms, troops, or ammunition — unless, of course, South Carolina attacked.

Now the dilemma sat with Jefferson Davis. Attacking Lincoln's resupply brigade would make the South the aggressive party. But he simply could not allow the fort to be resupplied. J.G. Gilchrist, a Southern newspaper writer, warned, "Unless you sprinkle the blood in the face of the people of Alabama, they will be back in the old Union in less than ten days."

Davis decided he had no choice but to order Major Anderson to surrender Sumter. Anderson refused.

The Civil War began at 4:30 a.m. on April 12, 1861, when Confederate artillery, under the command of General Pierre Gustave T. Beauregard, opened fire on Fort Sumter. Confederate batteries showered the fort with over 3,000 shells in a three-and-a-half day period. Anderson surrendered. Ironically, Beauregard had developed his military skills under Anderson's instruction at West Point. It was the first of countless relationships and families devastated in the Civil War. The fight was on.

CONCLUSION

Clearly the problems of slavery and especially the expansion of slavery into the West were enormous, but there were efforts at compromise. If the influential voices of the day – John Brown, Charles Sumner or Preston Brooks for example – hadn't been so extreme in their rhetoric or actions and had followed more closely the

1861 年 3 月 4 日，亚伯拉罕·林肯宣誓就职于华盛顿特区联盟主席。萨姆特堡的命运掌握在这两个领导人手中。

随着几个星期的过去，林肯对 Fort Sumter 采取了一些行动，并使各州团结起来。林肯认为南方分裂是"人为的"。杰斐逊·戴维斯（Jefferson Davis）派出一批专员前往华盛顿，就将萨姆特堡转运到南卡罗来纳州进行谈判，他们被迅速拒绝。

林肯有两难的境地。萨姆特堡正在用尽，但对堡垒的攻击似乎是北方的侵略。仍然是联盟的一部分的国家（如弗吉尼亚州和北卡罗来纳州）可能会进入分离主义阵营。国内外的人们可能会同情南方。然而，林肯不能让他的军队饿死，投降，冒着相当的弱点。

最后他制定了一个计划。 4 月 6 日，林肯告诉南卡罗来纳州长，他将向萨姆特堡递送物资。他不会派武器，部队或弹药 - 除非当然南卡罗来纳州遭到袭击。

现在，困境与杰斐逊戴维斯坐在一起。攻击林肯的补给队将使南方成为侵略性的党。但他根本无法让堡垒得到补充。 J.G.南方报纸作家吉尔克里斯特（Gilchrist）警告说："除非你在阿拉巴马州人民面前撒血，否则他们将在不到十天内回到老联盟。"

戴维斯决定别无选择，只能命令安德森少将投降萨姆特。安德森拒绝

内战于 1861 年 4 月 12 日上午 4 点 30 分开始，当时由联邦炮兵司令 Pierre Gustave T. Beauregard 将军在萨姆特堡开火。联邦电池在三天半的时间内，炮击了 3000 多枚炮弹。安德森投降。具有讽刺意味的是，Beauregard 在安徒生在西点的指导下发展了自己的军事技能。这是内战中无数关系和家庭遭受破坏的第一个。战斗了

结论

显然，奴隶制问题，特别是向西方扩大奴隶制问题是巨大的，但在妥协方面作出了努力。 如果当天的有影响力的声音 - 例如，约翰·布朗，查尔斯·萨姆纳或普雷斯顿·布鲁克斯，他们的言论或行动并

conciliatory example of Abraham Lincoln, could war have been avoided?

Or, had the problem just grown so large that war was inevitable, no matter how brilliant or charismatic the nation's leaders might have been. By the end of the 1850s, could anyone have keep the peace?

What do you think? Could America's leaders have prevented the Civil War?

没有如此极端，并且更紧密地关注了亚伯拉罕·林肯的和解榜样，那么战争可以避免吗？

或者，问题刚刚变得如此之大，战争是不可避免的，无论国家领导人多么辉煌或有魅力。 到 20 世纪 50 年代末，任何人都可以保持和平吗？

你怎么看？ 美国的领导人能否阻止内战？

Read Lincoln's First Inaugural Address

PEOPLE

Charles Sumner: Senator from Massachusetts, abolitionist, and leader of the Radical Republicans who advocated for immediate abolition.

Constitutional Union Party: A political party that existed just before the start of the Civil War. They argued simply that the nation should stay together and ignore the question of slavery. They did not win, but their candidate John Bell won some votes in the election of 1860.

Dred Scott: A slave who sued for his freedom after being taken into the North. His case went all the way to the Supreme Court where he lost.

Jefferson Davis: President of the Confederacy. Usually regarded as an ineffective wartime leader.

Martyr: A hero who dies for a cause.

Preston Brooks: Senator from South Carolina who angrily beat Charles Sumner on the floor of the Senate with his cane. He became a hero in the South.

Robert E. Lee: Brilliant general from Virginia who led the assault on John Brown at Harper's Ferry and later led the Confederate armies during the Civil War. His surrender to Ulysses S. Grant ended the war.

Roger Taney: The Supreme Court Chief Justice who wrote the Dred Scott decision.

人

查尔斯·萨姆纳（Charles Sumner）：马萨诸塞州的参议员，废除死刑人士以及倡导立即废除的激进共和党人领袖。

宪法联盟党：刚刚在内战开始之前就存在的政党。他们只是认为，国家应该在一起，忽视奴隶制问题。他们没有赢，但他们的候选人约翰·贝尔在 1860 年的选举中赢了一些票。

德雷斯特·斯科特（Dred Scott）：一名奴隶在被带进北方之后因为自由而被起诉。他的案子一路走到了他失去的最高法院。

杰斐逊戴维斯：联邦总统。通常被视为无效的战时领袖。

烈士：一个死因为一个事业的英雄。

普雷斯顿布鲁克斯：来自南卡罗来纳州的参议员，他用手杖在参议院的地板上愤怒地击败了查尔斯·萨姆纳。他成了南方的英雄。

罗伯特·李：来自弗吉尼亚州的辉煌将军，领导了哈珀小轮对约翰·布朗的袭击，后来在内战期间领导了同盟军。他投降到尤利西斯·格兰特结束了战争。

Roger Taney：最高法院首席法官，写了 Dred Scott 的决定。

KEY IDEAS

A House Divided: This was a metaphor that Abraham Lincoln articulated during the Lincoln-Douglas Debates. He said that the nation was like a house that could not stand if it was divided. He predicted that the country would either become all slave, or all free, but could not continue with slavery allowed in only the South.

Freeport Doctrine: Named for the town of Freeport, Illinois where Stephen Douglas articulated it in one of the Lincoln-Douglas Debates, the Freeport Doctrine was Douglas's assertion that despite the Dred Scott decision, the people of new territories could still ban slavery on their own. His argument for popular sovereignty angered Democrats in the South and helped lead to a split in the party.

Popular Sovereignty: The idea that the residents of each territory should decide for themselves if they would join the Union as a free or slave state. Stephen Douglas supported this idea and it was the heart of the Kansas-Nebraska Act.

The Better Angels of our Nature: A famous image invoked by President Lincoln at his first inaugural address when he called upon the nation to avoid war.

主要思想

分开的房子：这是亚伯拉罕·林肯在林肯－道格拉斯辩论中阐述的一个比喻。他说，这个国家就像一座房子，如果它是分裂的话，就不能忍受。他预言，该国将全部成为奴隶，或全部自由，但不能继续在南方允许的奴隶制。

自由港学说：自由港理论指出，伊利诺伊州的自由港镇斯蒂芬·道格拉斯（Stephen Douglas）在其中一个林肯道格拉斯辩论会上表达自由港的道理，道格拉斯认为尽管德里·斯科特的决定，新疆人民仍然可以自己禁止奴隶制。他对民主主义的论点激怒了南方的民主党人，并帮助导致党内分裂。

人民主权：每个领土的居民如果自愿参与联盟是一个自由或奴隶国家的想法，就应该自己决定。斯蒂芬·道格拉斯支持这一想法，这是"堪萨斯－内布拉斯加州法"的核心。

我们自然的更美好的天使：林肯总统在他呼吁国家避免战争时的首次就职演说中引用的一个着名形象。

COURT CASES

Dred Scott v. Sanford: A landmark Supreme Court case in 1857 in which Chief Justice Roger Taney wrote that the federal government did not have the power to regulate slavery, effectively allowing slavery in all states, North and South, as well as the territories. The outcome of the case infuriated abolitionists who saw it as a major expansion of the power of slave owners over the federal government.

法院案件

Dred Scott v。Sanford：1857 年的一个具有里程碑意义的最高法院案件，首席法官罗杰·坦尼（Roger Taney）写道，联邦政府没有权力管理奴隶制，有效地允许奴隶制在所有国家，南北，以及领土上。这一案件的结果令废除死刑的人士将其视为奴隶主对联邦政府权力的重大扩张。

LAWS

Fugitive Slave Act: A law passed by the United States Congress on September 18, 1850, as part of the Compromise of 1850 between Southern slave-holding interests and Northern Free-Soilers. The Act was one of the most controversial elements of the 1850 compromise and heightened Northern fears of a "slave power conspiracy" that was taking control of the federal government. It required that all escaped slaves were, upon capture, to be returned to their masters and that officials and citizens of free states had to cooperate in this law.

法律

"逃犯奴隶法" - 美国国会于 1850 年 9 月 18 日通过的法律，作为 1850 年南部奴隶主持有利国与北方自由土人之间妥协的一部分。该法案是 1850 年妥协中最有争议的因素之一，也是北约对联邦政府控制的"奴隶制阴谋"的恐惧。要求所有逃脱的奴隶在被捕后被归还给他们的主人，自由国家的官员和公民必须在这项法律上合作。

EVENTS

Lincoln-Douglas Debates: A series of famous debates between Abraham Lincoln and Stephen Douglas during their campaign for the open Illinois senate seat in 1858. Lincoln, a Republican, and Douglas a Democrat drew national attention as they debated the future of slavery. Despite losing the election, the debates catapulted Lincoln to widespread fame and respect.

活动

林肯道格拉斯辩论：1858 年亚利桑那州林肯和斯蒂芬·道格拉斯在开幕伊利诺伊州参议院竞选期间的一系列着名辩论。林肯，共和党人和民主党人道格拉斯在辩论奴隶制的未来时引起了国家的关注。尽管选举失败，但是辩论使林肯爆发了广泛的声望和尊重。

LOCATIONS

Confederacy: The Confederate States of America – the slave-holding states from the South that seceded.

Fort Sumter: Fort in Charleston Harbor, South Carolina. The Union controlled the fort at the start of the Civil War, and Confederate troops bombarded and took control of the fort. It was the first military action of the war.

Harper's Ferry: A small town in West Virginia and site of the federal arsenal that John Brown attacked.

地点

联邦：美联邦 - 南方的奴隶控制国家已经分裂。

萨姆特堡：南卡罗来纳州查尔斯顿港的堡垒。联盟在内战开始时控制堡垒，联邦部队轰炸并控制了堡垒。这是战争的第一次军事行动。

哈珀轮渡：西弗吉尼亚州的一个小镇，以及约翰·布朗袭击的联邦军火库。

4 | FOURTH QUESTION
COULD THE SOUTH HAVE WON THE CIVIL WAR?

WAS THE CIVIL WAR A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF SLAVERY?

INTRODUCTION

We often make the mistake of looking back at history and thinking, "of course." Of course the North was going to win the Civil War. Of course Lincoln would free the slaves. Of course the championship team was going to win!

But we rarely make this mistake when looking into the future. The future seems far less certain. And actually, looking more closely at events from history, the outcome of major events is usually less certain than we think it was. When the Civil War began both the North and the South thought that they would win easily, and they were both wrong. Each side had significant advantages, and had it not been for some key turning points, the outcome of the war might have been very different.

Don't be too quick to conclude that what did happen is what was going to happen all along.

Could the South have won the Civil War?

介绍

我们经常犯错误回顾历史和思考，"当然，"北方当然会赢得内战。 林肯当然会释放奴隶。 当然，冠军队要赢了！

但是，在展望未来时，我们很少会犯这个错误。 未来似乎不太确定。 实际上，更密切地关注历史事件，主要事件的结果通常不如我们认为的那样确定。 南北战争开始以来，北，南都认为自己很容易赢，而且都错了。 每个方面都有很大的优势，而不是一些关键的转折点，战争的结果可能会有很大的不同。

不要太快地得出结论，发生了什么是一直发生的事情。

南方能否赢得内战？

STRENGTHS AND WEAKNESSES

长处和短处

On paper, the **Union** outweighed the **Confederacy** in almost every way. Nearly 21 million people lived in 23 Northern states. The South claimed just 9 million people — including 3.5 million slaves — in 11 confederate states. Despite the North's greater population, however, the South had an army almost equal in size during the first year of the war.

在联合会上，联盟几乎以每一个方式胜过联盟。近二千一百万人住北 23 个州。南方在 11 个邦联国家中只有 900 万人－包括 350 万奴隶－。然而，尽管北方人口较多，但在战争的第一年，南方军队的兵力几乎相当。

The North had an enormous industrial advantage as well. At the beginning of the war, the Confederacy had only one-ninth the industrial capacity of the Union. But that statistic was misleading. In 1860, the North manufactured 97 percent of the country's firearms, 96 percent of its railroad locomotives, 94 percent of its cloth, 93 percent of its pig iron, and over 90 percent of its boots and shoes. The North had twice the density of railroads per square mile. There was not even one rifle works in the entire South.

北方也有巨大的工业优势。在战争开始时，联邦只有联盟的工业能力的九分之一。但这个统计数字是误导的。 1860 年，北方制造了 97％的枪支，96％的铁路机车，94％的布，93％的生铁，90％以上的靴子和鞋子。北方每平方英里的铁路密度是两倍。整个南方甚至没有一把步枪。

All of the principal ingredients of gunpowder were imported. Since the North controlled the navy, the seas were in the hands of the Union. A **blockade** could suffocate the South. Still, the Confederacy was not without resources and willpower.

火药的所有主要成分都是进口的。自北方控制海军以来，海洋掌握在联盟手中。封锁可能会使南方窒息。不过，联邦不是没有资源和意志力。

The South could produce all the food it needed, though transporting it to soldiers and civilians was a major problem. The South also had a great nucleus of trained officers. Seven of the eight military colleges in the country were in the South.

南方可以生产所需的所有食物，但将其运送到士兵和平民是一个主要问题。南方也有训练有素的军官的核心。该国八所军事学院中有七所在南部。

The South also proved to be very resourceful. By the end of the war, it had established armories and foundries in several states. They built huge gunpowder mills and melted down thousands of church and plantation bells for bronze to build cannon.

南方也证明是非常有智慧的。在战争结束之前，它已经在几个州建立了军火和代工厂。他们建造了大量的火药厂，融化了成千上万的教堂和种植园钟，为青铜建造大炮。

The South's greatest strength lay in the fact that it was fighting on the defensive in its own territory. Familiar with the landscape, Southerners could harass Northern invaders.

南方最大的优势在于它正在自己的领土上进行防御性的斗争。熟悉景观，南方人可以骚扰北方入侵者。

The military and political objectives of the Union were much more difficult to accomplish. The Union had to invade, conquer, and occupy the South. It had to destroy the South's capacity and will to resist — a formidable challenge in any war. In short, the North had to win. The South simply had to not lose.

联盟的军事和政治目标要难得多。联盟必须入侵，征服和占领南方。它必须摧毁南方的能力，并将抗拒－在任何战争中都是一个艰巨的挑战。总之，北方必须赢。南方根本不用输了。

Southerners enjoyed the initial advantage of morale: The South was fighting to maintain its way of life, whereas the North was fighting to maintain a union. Slavery did not become a moral cause of the Union effort until Lincoln announced the Emancipation Proclamation in 1863.

南方人享有士气的最初优势：南方正在努力维持生活，而北方正在争取维持联盟。林肯在 1863 年宣布解放宣言之前，奴隶制并没有成为联盟努力的道德原因。

When the war began, many key questions were still unanswered. What if the slave states of Maryland, Kentucky, Missouri, and Delaware joined the Confederacy? What if Britain or France came to the aid of the South? What if a few decisive early Confederate victories turned Northern public opinion against the war?

Indeed, the North looked much better on paper in terms of resources, but victory for the North was by no means a foregone conclusion.

THEY ALL THOUGHT IT WOULD BE A SHORT WAR

When the war began in April 1861, most Americans in the North and South expected the conflict to be brief. When President Lincoln called upon the governors and states of the Union to furnish him with 75,000 soldiers, he asked for an enlistment of only 90 days. When the Confederacy moved its capital to Richmond, Virginia, 100 miles from Washington, everyone expected a decisive battle to take place on the ground between the two cities.

In the spring of 1861, 35,000 Confederate troops led by General Pierre Beauregard moved north to protect Richmond against invasion. Lincoln's army had almost completed its 90-day enlistment requirement and still its field commander, General Irvin McDowell, did not want to fight. Pressured to act, on July 18 (three months after the war had begun) McDowell marched his army of 37,000 into Virginia.

Hundreds of reporters, congressional representatives, and other civilians traveled from Washington in carriages and on horses to see a real battle. It took the Northern troops two and a half days to march 25 miles. Beauregard was warned of McDowell's troop movement by a Southern belle who concealed the message in her hair. He consolidated his forces along the south bank of Bull Run, a river a few miles north of Manassas Junction, and waited for the Union troops to arrive.

Early on July 21, the **First Battle of Bull Run** began. During the first two hours of battle, 4,500 Confederates gave ground grudgingly to 10,000 Union soldiers. But as the Confederates were retreating, they found a brigade of fresh troops led by General Thomas Jackson waiting just over the crest of the hill.

Trying to rally his infantry, General Bernard Bee of South Carolina shouted, "Look, there is Jackson with his Virginians, standing like a stone wall!" The Southern troops held firm, and Jackson's nickname, "Stonewall," was born.

战争开始时，许多关键问题仍然没有得到回答。如果马里兰州，肯塔基州，密苏里州和特拉华州的奴隶国家加入了联邦会怎么办？如果英国或法国来到南方的援助呢？如果联合早期的一些胜利使北方舆论反对战争呢？

事实上，北方在资源方面看起来更好，但北方的胜利决不是一个预期的结论。

他们都认为这将是一场短暂的战争

1861年4月的战争开始时，大多数南北美洲的美国人预计这场冲突是短暂的。林肯总统呼吁国家元首和国家向他提供7.5万名士兵，他要求只有90天的时间。当联邦将其首都迁往位于弗吉尼亚州里士满距离华盛顿州100英里的地方时，每个人都希望在两个城市之间进行决战。

1861 年春天，由皮埃尔·贝奥尔加德将军率领的 35,000 名联盟部队向北移动，以保护里士满免遭入侵。林肯的军队几乎完成了 90 天的征兵要求，而且现场指挥官艾文·麦克道尔将军也不想打架。 7 月 18 日（战争开始后三个月），麦克道尔将军队进入弗吉尼亚州 3.7 万人。

数百名记者，国会代表和其他平民从华盛顿乘坐马车走马，看到真正的战斗。北部军队需要两天半的时间才能行进 25 英里。 Beauregard 被警告麦克道尔的部队运动由一个南部的贝尔隐藏在她的头发的信息。他将军队沿着牛跑线南岸巩固，这是一条位于马纳萨斯交界以北几英里的河流，并等待联盟部队到达。

七月二十一日，第一场公牛跑战开始了。在前两个小时的战斗中，有 4,500 个联盟慷慨地向 10,000 名联盟士兵致敬。但是，随着联盟的撤退，他们发现一个由托马斯·杰克逊将军领导的新兵部队正等着山顶。

南卡罗来纳州伯纳德将军试图集会他的步兵，大声说："看，杰克逊和他的弗吉尼亚州人一样，像石墙一样站立！"南方军队坚定不移，杰克逊的绰号"石墙"诞生了。

During the afternoon, thousands of additional Confederate troops arrived by horse and by train. The Union troops had been fighting in intense heat — many for 14 hours. By late in the day, they were feeling the effects of their efforts. At about 4 p.m., when Beauregard ordered a massive counterattack, Stonewall Jackson urged his soldiers to "yell like furies." The Rebel Yell became a hallmark of the Confederate Army. A retreat by the Union became a rout.

下午，成千上万的联邦部队乘搭马车和火车抵达。联盟部队一直在热烈的战斗中，很多时间是 14 小时。到了今天晚些时候，他们感觉到他们的努力的影响。大约下午四点左右，当 Beauregard 下令大规模的反击时，Stonewall Jackson 敦促他的士兵"像野兽一样大喊大叫"。叛军耶尔成为联邦军的标志。联盟的撤退变成了一个溃败。

Over 4,800 soldiers were killed, wounded, or listed as missing from both armies in the battle. The next day, Lincoln named Major General **George B. McClellan** to command the new **Army of the Potomac** and signed legislation for the enlistment of one million troops to last three years. The high esprit de corps of the Confederates was elevated by their victory. For the North, which had supremacy in numbers, it increased their caution. Seven long months passed before McClellan agreed to fight. Meanwhile, Lincoln was growing impatient at the timidity of his generals.

战争中有两万八百多名士兵死亡，受伤，或被列为两军失踪。第二天，林肯被命名为少将麦克莱伦少将，指挥新的波托马克士兵，并签署立法，征收一百万军队三年。他们的胜利提高了联盟的高层次。对于数量至高无上的北方，它增加了警惕。七点半的时间过去了，麦克莱伦同意打架。同时，林肯对他将军的胆怯感到不耐烦。

In many ways, the Civil War represented a transition from the old style of fighting to the new style. During Bull Run and other early engagements, traditional uniformed lines of troops faced off, each trying to outflank the other. As the war progressed, new weapons and tactics changed warfare forever. Railroads were used by armies. Metal boats called ironclads replaced wooden warships and leaders sent messages over telegraph.

内战在很多方面代表着从旧式战斗向新风格的过渡。在公牛跑和其他早期的行动中，传统的军服线路面临着纷争，每一条路线都试图将另一条路线挡住。随着战争的进行，新的武器和战术永远改变了战争。铁路由军队使用。金属艇被称为铁杆，代替了木制军舰，领导人通过电报发送信息。

THE WAR AT HOME: THE NORTH

在家的战争：北方

After initial setbacks, most Northern civilians experienced an explosion of wartime production. During the war, coal and iron production reached their highest levels. Merchant ship tonnage peaked. Traffic on the railroads and the Erie Canal rose over 50%.

最初的挫折之后，大多数北方平民经历了战时生产的爆炸式爆炸。战争期间，煤，铁产量达到最高水平。商船吨位达到顶峰。铁路和伊利运河交通量超过50%。

Union manufacturers grew so profitable that many companies doubled or tripled their dividends to stockholders. The newly rich built lavish homes and spent their money extravagantly on carriages, silk clothing and jewelry. There was a great deal of public outrage that such conduct was unbecoming or even immoral in times of war. What made this lifestyle even more offensive was that workers' salaries shrank in real terms due to inflation. The price of beef, rice and sugar doubled from their pre-war levels, yet salaries rose only half as fast as prices while companies of all kinds made record profits.

联盟制造商的盈利能力有所增加，许多公司的股利将其股利翻倍或三倍。新建的豪华家园，花费在花车，丝绸服装和首饰上。在战争时期，这种行为是不道德的，甚至是不道德的，这是一种大胆的愤慨。这种生活方式更令人厌恶的是，由于通货膨胀，工人的薪水实际上会减少。牛肉，大米和糖的价格从战前水平翻了一番，但薪水涨幅只有价格的一半，而各种公司的利润创历史新高。

Women's roles changed dramatically during the war. Before the war, women of the North already had been prominent in a number of industries, including textiles, clothing and shoe-making. With

战争期间，妇女的角色发生了巨大变化。在战前，北方的妇女在纺织，服装和制鞋等行业中一直处于突出位置。随着冲突，妇女从政府公务员到农业工作的就

the conflict, there were great increases in employment of women in occupations ranging from government civil service to agricultural field work. As men entered the Union army, women's proportion of the manufacturing work force went from one-fourth to one-third. At home, women organized over one thousand soldiers' aid societies, rolled bandages for use in hospitals and raised millions of dollars to aid injured troops.

Nowhere was their impact felt greater than in field hospitals close to the front. Dorothea Dix, who led the effort to provide state hospitals for the mentally ill, was named the first superintendent of women nurses and set rigid guidelines for quality. **Clara Barton**, working in a patent office, became one of the most admired nurses during the war and, as a result of her experiences, formed the **American Red Cross**.

业人数大幅增加。随着男子进军联盟军队，制造业劳动力的比例从四分之一提高到三分之一。在家里，妇女组织了一千多个士兵援助协会，绷带用于医院，并筹集了数百万美元来援助受伤部队。

没有任何地方，他们的影响比接近前方的野战医院更大。领导为精神病患者提供国家医院努力的 Dorothea Dix 被评为女护士的第一任主管，并制定严格的质量指导方针。在专利局工作的克拉拉·巴顿（Clara Barton）在战争期间成为最受钦佩的护士之一，并且由于她的经验，组建了美国红十字会。

Primary Source: Photograph
Clara Barton, the founder of the American Red Cross

主要来源：照片
美国红十字会的创始人克拉拉·巴顿（Clara Barton）

Resentment of the **draft** was another divisive issue. In the middle of 1862, Lincoln called for 300,000 volunteer soldiers. Each state was given a quota, and if it could not meet the quota, it had no recourse but to draft men into the state militia. Resistance was so great in some parts of Pennsylvania, Ohio, Wisconsin and Indiana

草案的怨恨是另一个分歧的问题。在 1862 年中期，林肯要求 30 万志愿兵。每个国家都有配额，如果不能达到这个配额，就没有追求权力，而是把男人嫁给国家民兵。宾夕法尼亚州，俄亥俄州，威斯康星州和印第安纳州的部分地区的抵抗力如此之大，军队不得

4 **COULD THE SOUTH HAVE WON THE CIVIL WAR?**

WAS THE CIVIL WAR
A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT
FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF
SLAVERY?

that the army had to send in troops to keep order. Tempers flared further over the provision that allowed exemptions for those who could afford to hire a substitute.

不派兵部队维持秩序。在允许有能力聘请替补者的条款下，温和气氛进一步扩大。

In 1863, facing a serious loss of manpower through casualties and expiration of enlistments, Congress authorized the government to enforce conscription, resulting in **riots** in several states. In July 1863, when draft offices were established in New York to bring new Irish workers into the military, mobs formed to resist. At least 74 people were killed over three days. The same troops that had just been fighting Lee's army in the South were deployed to maintain order in New York City.

1863 年，由于人员伤亡人数严重丧失，国会授权政府实施征兵，造成几个州的骚乱。 1863 年 7 月，当纽约设立办事处，将新的爱尔兰工人纳入军队时，形成抵抗的暴徒。三天内至少有 74 人遇害。刚刚在南方战胜李军的同样部队也部署在纽约市维持秩序。

THE WAR AT HOME: THE SOUTH

在家的战争：南方

After the initial months of the war, the South was plagued with shortages of all kinds. It started with clothing. As the first winter of the war approached, the Confederate army needed wool clothing to keep their soldiers warm. But the South did not produce much wool and the Northern blockade prevented much wool from being imported from abroad. People all over the South donated their woolens to the cause. Soon families at home were cutting blankets out of carpets.

在战争的最初几个月之后，南方一直处于不经济的状态。它从服装开始。随着战争的第一个冬天，联邦军队需要羊毛服装来保持他们的士气。但是南方没有多少羊毛，而北方的封锁阻止了许多羊毛从国外进口。南方各地的人民都把羊毛捐给了事业。家里很快的家人正在毯子上擦去毯子。

Almost all the shoes worn in the South were manufactured in the North. With the start of the war, shipments of shoes ceased and there would be few new shoes available for years. The first meeting of Confederate and Union forces at Gettysburg arose when Confederates were investigating a supply of shoes in a warehouse.

几乎所有在南方穿的鞋都是在北方制造的。随着战争的开始，鞋子的出货停止了，几年来几乎没有新的鞋子可用。当联盟正在调查仓库内的鞋子供应时，葛底斯堡联邦和联盟部队的第一次会议出现。

Money was another problem. The South's decision to print more money to pay for the war led to unbelievable increases in price of everyday items. By the end of 1861, the overall rate of **inflation** was running 12% per month. For example, salt was the only means to preserve meat at this time. Its price increased from 65¢ for a 200 pound bag in May 1861 to $60 per sack only 18 months later. Wheat, flour, corn meal, meats of all kinds, iron, tin and copper became too expensive for the ordinary family. Profiteers frequently bought up all the goods in a store to sell them back at a higher price. It was an unmanageable situation. **Food riots** occurred in Mobile, Atlanta and Richmond.

钱是另一个问题。南方决定打印更多的钱来支付战争，导致日常物品价格难以置信的上涨。到 1861 年底，整体通货膨胀率每月上涨 12%。例如，盐是目前唯一保存肉类的手段。其价格从1861年5月的200磅袋子的 65 澳元升至 18 个月后的每袋 60 美元。小麦，面粉，玉米粉，各种肉类，铁，锡和铜对于普通家庭来说变得太贵了。获利者经常在商店买下所有商品，以较高的价格出售。这是一个难以置信的局面。移动，亚特兰大和里士满发生粮食骚乱。

Over the course of the war, inflation in the South caused Women's roles changed dramatically. The absence of men meant that women were now heads of households. Women staffed the Confederate government as clerks and became schoolteachers for the first time. Women at first were denied permission to work in

在战争的过程中，南方的通货膨胀导致妇女的角色发生了巨大的变化。没有男人意味着妇女现在是家庭户主。妇女配备了联邦政府作为文员，并成为教师第一次。首先，妇女被剥夺准许在军医医院工作，因为他们被暴露在"没有女士应该看到的景点"。但是，当伤

military hospitals as they were exposed to "sights that no lady should see." But when casualties rose to the point that wounded men would die in the streets due to lack of attention, female nurses such as Sally Louisa Tompkins and Kate Cumming would not be denied. Indeed, by late 1862, the Confederate Congress enacted a law permitting civilians in military hospitals, giving preference to women.

The most unpopular act of the Confederate government was the institution of a draft. Like in the North, loopholes permitted a drafted man to hire a substitute, leading many wealthy men to avoid service. When the Confederate Congress exempted anyone who supervised 20 slaves, dissension exploded. Many started to conclude that it was "a rich man's war and a poor man's fight." This sentiment and the suffering of their families led many to desert the Confederate armies. By November 1863, James Seddon, the Confederate Secretary of War said he could not account for 1/3 of the army. Soldiers worried more about their families then staying to fight for their new country. Much of the Confederate army deserted and went home to pick up the pieces of their shattered lives.

DIPLOMACY: THE IMPORTANCE OF EUROPEAN POWER

Rebellions rarely succeed without foreign support. When the Americans launched their revolution against British rule in the 1770s, French support was crucial to their success. The North and South both sought British and French support. Jefferson Davis was determined to secure such an alliance with Britain or France for the Confederacy. Abraham Lincoln knew this could not be permitted. A great chess match was about to begin.

Cotton was a formidable weapon in Southern diplomacy. Europe was reliant on cotton grown in the South for their textile industry. Over 75% of the cotton used by British mills came from states within the Confederacy.

By 1863, the Union blockade reduced British cotton imports to 3% of their pre-war levels. Throughout Europe there was a cotton famine. There was also a great deal of money being made by British shipbuilders. The South needed fast ships to run the blockade, which British shipbuilders were more than happy to furnish.

France had reasons to support the South. Napoleon III saw an opportunity to get cotton and to restore a French presence in America, especially in Mexico, by forging an alliance.

员上升到受伤的男人由于缺乏关注而在街头死亡时，女性护士如 Sally Louisa Tompkins 和 Kate Cumming 不会被否认。的确，到 1862 年底，联邦议会通过了一项法律，允许在军事医院的平民，倾向于妇女。

联邦政府最不受欢迎的行为是制定草案。像在北方一样，漏洞允许一个起草人雇用替代品，导致许多富有的人避免服务。当联邦大会免除任何监督 20 名奴隶的人时，分歧爆发。许多人开始得出结论，这是"一个富人的战争和一个穷人的战斗"。这种情绪和家庭的痛苦使许多人脱离了联邦军队。到了 1863 年 11 月，联邦战争部长詹姆斯·塞德登（James Seddon）说，他不能占到军队的 1/3。士兵更多地担心他们的家人，然后为新国家而战。许多联邦军已经离开了，回家接受了他们破碎的生命。

外交：欧洲电力的重要性

没有国外支持，叛乱很少成功。当美国人在 17 世纪 70 年代发动革命反对英国统治时，法国的支持对他们的成功至关重要。南北方寻求英法支持。杰斐逊戴维斯决心与英国或法国保持联盟。亚伯拉罕·林肯知道这是不允许的。一场伟大的国际象棋比赛即将开始。

棉花是南方外交的强大武器。欧洲依赖南部棉花种植纺织业。英国工厂使用的棉花超过 75% 来自联邦内的国家。

到 1863 年，联盟封锁将英国棉花进口量降至战前水平的 3%。在整个欧洲，有一场棉花饥荒。英国造船厂也有很多钱。南方需要快速的船只进行封锁，英国造船企业很乐意提供这种封锁。

法国有理由支持南方。拿破仑三世通过建立联盟，有机会获得棉花并恢复法国在美国的业务，特别是在墨西哥。

4 **COULD THE SOUTH HAVE WON THE CIVIL WAR?**

WAS THE
CIVIL WAR
A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT
FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF
SLAVERY?

But the North also had cards to play. Crop failures in Europe in the early years of the war increased British dependency on Union wheat. In 1862, over one-half of British grain imports came from the Union. The growth of other British industries such as the iron and shipbuilding offset the decline in the textile industry. British merchant vessels were also carrying much of the trade between the Union and Great Britain, providing another source of income.

但北方也有卡牌玩。欧洲在战争初期的作物失败增加了英国对联盟小麦的依赖。 1862 年，英国粮食进口的一半以上来自联盟。其他英国工业如铁和造船业的增长抵消了纺织行业的下滑。英国的商船也在英国和英国之间进行了大部分的贸易交易，提供了另一个收入来源。

The greatest problem for the South lay in its embrace of slavery, as the British took pride in their leadership of ending the trans-Atlantic slave trade. To support a nation that had openly embraced slavery now seemed unthinkable. After Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation and freed slaves in the rebelling states, Britain was much less prepared to intervene on behalf of the South.

南方最大的问题在于拥抱奴隶制，因为英国人为遏制跨大西洋贩卖奴隶的领导而感到自豪。支持一个公然接受奴隶制的国家似乎是不可想象的。在林肯发布"解放宣言"后，叛乱国家释放了奴隶，英国不太愿意代表南方干预。

The key for each side was to convince Europe that victory for its side was inevitable. Early Southern victories convinced Britain that the North couldn't triumph against a foe so large and so opposed to domination. This was a lesson reminiscent of the one learned by the British themselves in the Revolutionary War. Yet, despite all its victories, the South never struck a decisive blow to the North. The British felt they must know that the South's independence was certain before recognizing the Confederacy. The great Southern loss at Antietam in 1862 loomed large in the minds of European diplomats.

双方的关键是要说服欧洲，胜利是不可避免的。南部早期的胜利说服了英国，北方不能胜过一个如此大的敌对，反对统治的敌人。这是一个教训，让人想起英国人在革命战争中获得的教训。然而，尽管取得了一切胜利，但是南方从未对北方造成决定性的打击。英国人觉得他们必须知道，在承认联邦之前，南方的独立是确定的。 1862 年在安提坦失败的伟大南部在欧洲外交官的脑海中浮出水面。

Yet efforts did not stop. Lincoln, his Secretary of State William Seward, and Ambassador Charles Francis Adams labored tirelessly to maintain British neutrality. As late as 1864, Jefferson Davis proposed to release slaves in the South if Britain would recognize the Confederacy, but it was too little too late. Britain and France never took side.

然而，努力并没有停止。林肯，他的国务卿威廉·西尔瓦德，以及查尔斯·弗朗西斯·亚当斯大使辛辛苦苦地努力维护英国的中立。直到 1864 年，杰斐逊·戴维斯（Jefferson Davis）提出在南方释放奴隶，如果英国承认联邦，但太迟了。英国和法国从来没有站在一边。

GETTYSBURG: THE TURNING POINT OF THE WAR

GETTYSBURG：**战争的转折点**

As the years dragged on, Robert E. Lee developed a strategy to end the war. He proposed to take the offensive, invade the northern state of Pennsylvania, and defeat the Union Army in its own territory. Such a victory would relieve Virginia of the burden of war, strengthen the hand of **Peace Democrats** in the North, and undermine Lincoln's chances for reelection. It would reopen the possibility for European support that was closed at Antietam. And perhaps, it would even lead to peace.

随着这几年的拖延，罗伯特·李（Lee E. Lee）制定了战略来结束战争。他提出采取进攻，入侵北方宾夕法尼亚州，并在自己的领土上击败联军。这样的胜利可以缓解弗吉尼亚州的战争负担，加强和平民主人士在北方的手中，破坏林肯的连任机会。这将重新打开 Antietam 关闭的欧洲支持的可能性。也许甚至会导致和平。

4 COULD THE SOUTH HAVE WON THE CIVIL WAR?

WAS THE
CIVIL WAR
A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT
FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF
SLAVERY?

The result of this vision was the largest battle ever fought on the North American continent. This was **Gettysburg**, where more than 170,000 fought and over 40,000 were casualties.

Lee began his quest in mid-June 1863, leading 75,000 soldiers out of Virginia into south-central Pennsylvania. Forty miles to the south of Lee, the new commander of the Union Army of the Potomac, General George Meade, headed north with his 95,000 soldiers. When Lee learned of the approach of this concentrated force, he sent couriers to his generals with orders to reunite near Gettysburg to do battle. As sections of the Confederate Army moved to join together, Confederate General A.P. Hill, heard a rumor that that there was a large supply of shoes at Gettysburg. On July 1, 1863, he sent one of his divisions to get those shoes. The battle of Gettysburg was about to begin.

As Hill approached Gettysburg from the west, he was met by the Union cavalry of John Buford. Couriers from both sides were sent out for reinforcements. By early afternoon, 40,000 troops were on the battlefield, aligned in a semicircle north and west of the town. At noon on July 2, the second day of the battle, Lee ordered his divisions to attack but the Union soldiers were able to prevent defeat.

Lee was determined to leave Pennsylvania with a victory. On the third day of battle, he ordered a major assault against the center of the Union line on Cemetery Ridge. Confederate cannon batteries started to fire into the Union center. The firing continued for two hours. At 3 p.m., 14,000 Confederate soldiers under the command of General George Pickett began their famous **charge** across three-quarters of a mile of open field to the Union line.

Few Confederates made it and the attack has often been called the **High Tide of the Confederacy**. Lee's attempt for a decisive victory in Pennsylvania had failed. He had lost 28,000 troops — one-third of his army. A month later, he offered his resignation to Jefferson Davis, which was refused. Meade had lost 23,000 soldiers. The hope for Southern recognition by any foreign government was dashed. The war continued for two more years, but Gettysburg marked the end of Lee's major offensives.

这个愿景的结果是在北美洲大陆上所做过的最大的战争。这是葛底斯堡,超过十七万战斗,四万多人受伤。

李鹏于 1863 年 6 月中旬开始寻求任务,将弗吉尼亚州的 7.5 万名士兵带到宾夕法尼亚州中南部。波托马克联盟军总司令梅德(George Meade)的新指挥官在李的南部四十里,北方与他的 95,000 名士兵。当李某学习了这种集中力量的方式时,他派遣快递员到他的将军下令命令在葛底斯堡附近重新组团做战。由于联邦军的各个部分联合起来,联邦总理希尔山听到谣言说,葛底斯堡有大量的鞋子供应。 1863 年 7 月 1 日,他派他的一个部门去拿这些鞋子。葛底斯堡的战役即将开始。

当希尔从西边接近葛底斯堡时,他被约翰·布福德的联盟骑兵遇见。双方的快递员被派出加强。到了下午,在战场上有四万人在北部和西部半圆形的一边。7 月 2 日中午,在战斗的第二天,李命令他的部队进行攻击,但联盟的士兵能够防止失败。
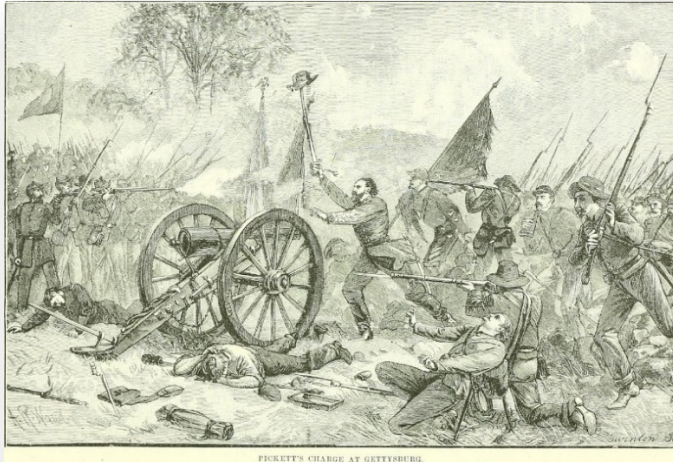
李先生决心离开宾夕法尼亚州取得胜利。在战斗的第三天,他下令对公墓岭上的联盟线的中心进行重大攻击。联邦大炮电池开始射入联盟中心。射击持续了两个小时。下午 3 点,由乔治·皮克特将军指挥的 14,000 名联军士兵在联合线上的四分之三英里的开放场地开始了他们的着名袭击。

很少有联邦成立,这次袭击常常被称为联邦高潮。李在宾夕法尼亚州取得决定性胜利的企图失败了。他失去了 28000 名士兵 - 他的三分之一的军队。一个月后,他向 Jefferson Davis 递交了辞呈。米德失去了 23000 名士兵。任何外国政府对南方认可的希望被打破了。战争持续了两年,但葛底斯堡标志着李的主要攻势的结束。

Secondary Source: Illustration

An artist's illustration of a scene from Pickett's Charge at the Battle of Gettysburg published in 1896.

次要资料来源：插图

一位艺术家在葛底斯堡战役中的皮克特的指挥中画了一幅画。

THE LONG, SLOW END OF THE WAR

Only one day after their victory at Gettysburg, Union forces captured **Vicksburg**, the last Confederate stronghold on the Mississippi River. Lincoln and Union commanders began to make plans for finishing the war. The Union strategy to win the war did not emerge all at once. By 1863, however, the Northern military plan consisted of five major goals:

First, blockade all Southern coasts. This strategy, known as the **Anaconda Plan**, would eliminate the possibility of Confederate help from abroad.

Second, control the Mississippi River. The river was the South's major inland waterway. Also, Northern control of the rivers would separate Texas, Louisiana, and Arkansas from the other Confederate states.

Third, capture **Richmond**. Without its capital, the Confederacy's command lines would be disrupted.

Fourth, shatter Southern civilian morale by capturing and destroying the cities of Atlanta, Savannah, and the heart of Southern secession, the State of South Carolina.

Finally, Lincoln and his generals planned to use the numerical advantage of Northern troops to engage the enemy everywhere to break the spirits of the Confederate Army.

战争的长期，缓慢的结束

在葛底斯堡胜利一天之后，联盟部队俘获了密西西比河上一个同盟堡垒维克斯堡。林肯和联盟指挥官开始制定完成战争的计划。联盟战胜战争并没有立即出现。然而，到 1863 年，北方军事计划包括五个主要目标：

首先，封锁南部所有海岸。这个被称为"蟒蛇计划"的战略将会消除国外联邦帮助的可能性。

二是控制密西西比河。这条河是南方的主要内河航道。另外，河流的北方控制将使德克萨斯州，路易斯安那州和阿肯色州与其他邦联州分开。

第三，捕获里士满。没有资本，联邦的命令行将被打乱。

第四，通过夺取和摧毁亚特兰大，萨凡纳以及南卡罗来纳州南部分离国家的心脏，打破南方民族士气。

最后，林肯及其将领计划利用北军的数值优势，使敌对各地打破联军的精神。

By early 1864, the first two goals had been accomplished. The blockade had successfully prevented any meaningful foreign aid and also prevented the South from exporting any of its cotton, thus starving it of badly needed cash. General **Ulysses S. Grant**'s success at Vicksburg delivered the Mississippi River to the Union. Lincoln turned to Grant to finish the job and, in the spring of 1864, appointed Grant to command the entire Union Army.

Grant had a plan to end the war by November. He mounted several major simultaneous offensives. General George Meade was to lead the Union's massive Army of the Potomac against Robert E. Lee. Grant would stay with Meade, who commanded the largest Northern army. General James Butler was to advance up the James River in Virginia and attack Richmond, the capital of the Confederacy. General **William Tecumseh Sherman** was to plunge into the heart of the South, inflicting as much damage as he could against their war resources.

Meade faced Lee's army in Virginia. Lee's strategy was to use terrain and fortified positions to his advantage, thus decreasing the importance of the Union's superiority in numbers. He hoped to make the cost of trying to force the South back into the Union so high that the Northern public would not stand for it.

But, unlike the Union commanders of the past, Grant had the determination to press on despite the cost. Twenty-eight thousand soldiers were casualties of the Battle of the Wilderness. A few days later, another 28,000 soldiers were casualties in the

到 1864 年初，前两个目标已经完成。封锁成功地阻止了任何有意义的外援，也阻止了南方出口任何棉花，从而使其惨重的需要现金。尤利西斯·格兰特将军在维克斯堡的成功将密西西比河交付给联盟。林肯转向格兰特完成这项工作，并于 1864 年春天任命格兰特指挥整个联盟军。

格兰特有计划在十一月结束战争。他同时进行了多次攻势。乔治·米德将军将领导联盟庞大的波托马克斯军队对抗罗伯特·李。格兰特会留下指挥最大的北方军队的米德。詹姆斯·巴特勒将军要在弗吉尼亚州的詹姆斯河上升，并攻击联邦首府里士满。威廉·特古西将军将军入侵南部的中心地带，尽可能多的损害他们的战争资源。

米德在维吉尼亚面临着李的军队。李的策略是为了利用地势和强化地位，从而降低了联盟数量优势的重要性。他希望把试图迫使南方重新加入联盟的成本高昂，使北方公众不会承认这一点。

但是，与过去的联盟指挥官不同，格兰特决心尽管付出代价。二万八千名士兵是旷野之战的伤亡人员。几天之后，另外还有 28000 名士兵在"波西塔尼亚法院"

Battle of Spotsylvania Court House. More than two-thirds of the casualties of these battles were Union soldiers.

At Cold Harbor the following week, Grant lost another 13,000 soldiers — 7,000 of them in half an hour. In the 30 days that Grant had been fighting Lee, he lost 50,000 troops — a number equal to half the size of the Confederate army at the time. As a result, Grant became known as "The Butcher." Congress was appalled and petitioned for his removal. But Lincoln argued that Grant was winning the battles and refused to grant Congress's request.

Butler failed to capture Richmond, and the Confederate capital was temporarily spared. On May 6, 1864, one day after Grant and Lee started their confrontation in the Wilderness, Sherman entered Georgia, scorching whatever resources that lay in his path. By late July, he had forced the enemy back to within sight of Atlanta. For a month, he lay siege to the city. Finally, in early September he entered Atlanta — one day after the Confederate army evacuated it.

Sherman waited until seven days after Lincoln's hotly fought reelection before putting Atlanta to the torch and starting his army's **March to the Sea**. No one stood before him. His soldiers pillaged the countryside and destroyed everything of conceivable military value as they traveled 285 miles to Savannah, Georgia in a march that became legendary for the misery it created among the civilian population. On December 22, 1864 Savannah fell. When he arrived, Sherman sent a telegram to President Lincoln saying, "I beg to present you as a Christmas gift the City of Savannah…"

Next, Sherman ordered his army to move north into South Carolina. Their intent was to destroy the state where secession began. Exactly a month later, its capital, Columbia, fell to him. On the same day, Union Forces retook Fort Sumter. The war was almost over.

战役中受伤。这些战斗的三分之二以上的伤员是联盟士兵。

在寒冷的海湾，在接下来的一周，格兰特在半小时内又失去了 13000 名士兵，其中 7000 人。在格兰特一直在打李的 30 天里，他输了 5 万人，其数量相当于当时联邦军的一半。结果，格兰特被称为"屠夫"。国会令人震惊，并要求他被移走。但林肯认为，格兰特赢得了这场战斗，拒绝给予国会的要求。

巴特勒没有夺取里士满，联邦首都暂时得不到保障。1864 年 5 月 6 日，格兰特和李在旷野开始对抗后的一天，谢尔曼进入格鲁吉亚，烧焦了他所有的资源。到七月下旬，他强迫敌人回到亚特兰大。一个月，他围困了城市。最后，在 9 月初他进入亚特兰大 - 在联盟军队撤离后的一天。

谢尔曼等到林肯热烈的连任七天后才把亚特兰大带到火炬，开始了他的军队的三月到海。没有人站在他面前。他的士兵掠夺了农村，并摧毁了所有可以想象的军事价值，因为他们在格鲁吉亚的萨凡纳旅行了 285 公里，成为传奇人物为平民造成的痛苦。 1864 年 12 月 22 日，萨凡纳跌倒。当他到达时，谢尔曼向林肯总统发了一封电报，说："我要求你作圣诞礼物赠送萨凡纳市…"

接下来，谢尔曼下令他的军队向北移动到南卡罗来纳州。他们的意图是摧毁分裂开始的国家。恰好一个月后，其首都哥伦比亚落在他的身后。同一天，联盟部队撤回了萨姆特堡。战争已经结束了。

Primary Source: Illustration

A drawing published in Harper's Weekly depicting the burning of Columbia, South Carolina by General Sherman's troops.

主要来源：插图

在哈珀周刊上发表的一幅绘画，描绘了谢尔曼将军的南卡罗来纳州哥伦比亚的燃烧。

THE ELECTION OF 1864

It is hard for modern Americans to believe that Abraham Lincoln, one of history's most beloved Presidents, was nearly defeated in his reelection attempt in 1864. Yet by that summer, Lincoln himself feared he would lose. How could this happen? First, the country had not elected an incumbent President for a second term since Andrew Jackson in 1832 — nine Presidents in a row had served just one term. Also, his embrace of emancipation was still a problem for many Northern voters.

Despite Union victories at Gettysburg and Vicksburg a year earlier, the Southern armies came back fighting with a vengeance. During three months in the summer of 1864, over 65,000 Union soldiers were killed, wounded, or missing-in-action. In comparison, there had been 108,000 Union casualties in the first three years. General Ulysses S. Grant was being called The Butcher. At one time during the summer, Confederate soldiers came within five miles of the White House.

Lincoln had much to contend with. He had staunch opponents in the Congress. Underground Confederate activities brought rebellion to parts of Maryland. Lincoln's suspension of the **writ of habeas corpus** was ruled unconstitutional by Supreme Court Chief Justice Roger B. Taney — an order Lincoln refused to obey.

Meanwhile the Democratic Party split, with major opposition from Peace Democrats, who wanted a negotiated peace at any cost. They chose as their nominee George B. McClellan, Lincoln's former commander of the Army of the Potomac. Even Lincoln expected that McClellan would win.

选举 1864 年

现代美国人很难相信，历史上最受欢迎的总统亚伯拉罕·林肯在 1864 年的连任中几乎被打败了。但到那个夏天，林肯本人担心他会输。怎么会这样呢？首先，自 1832 年，安德鲁·杰克逊（Andrew Jackson）以来，该国并没有任命现任总统第二任职务 - 连续九名总统任职一届。此外，他对解放的拥抱仍然是许多北方选民的问题。

尽管联盟在一年前在葛底斯堡和维克斯堡取得了胜利，但南方军队又复出战斗。在 1864 年夏天的三个月内，有六万五千多名联军士兵在行动中丧生，受伤或失踪。相比之下，前三年共有 108,000 名联盟伤亡人数。尤利西斯·格兰特将军被称为屠夫。在夏天的同一时间，联邦士兵来到白宫五英里以内。

林肯有很多的对抗。他在国会里坚决反对。地下联盟活动为马里兰州的部分地区带来了叛乱。林肯暂停人身保护令令被最高法院首席法官罗杰·班尼（Roger B. Taney）裁定为违宪，林肯拒绝服从。

同时，民主党分裂，和平民主人士的主要反对派，谁想要谈判和平，不惜一切代价。他们选择了他们的提名人乔治·麦克莱伦，林肯的前司令的波托马克军队。连林肯也都预料麦克莱伦会赢。

The South was well aware of Union discontent. Many felt that if the Southern armies could hold out until the election, negotiations for Northern recognition of Confederate independence might begin.

Everything changed on September 6, 1864, when General Sherman seized Atlanta. The war effort had turned decidedly in the North's favor and even McClellan now argued for continuing the war and achieving military victory instead of trying to negotiate a peace agreement with the Confederacy. Two months later, Lincoln won the popular vote that eluded him in his first election. He won the electoral college by 212 to 21 and the Republicans won three-fourths of Congress. A second term and the power to conclude the war were now in his hands.

APPOMATTOX: THE SOUTH SURRENDERS

After Sherman's victory in Savannah, only Robert E. Lee's Army of Northern Virginia remained as a substantial military force to oppose the Union Army. For nine months, Grant and Lee had faced each other from 53 miles of trenches during the **Siege of Petersburg**. Lee's forces had been reduced to 50,000, while Grant's had grown to over 120,000.

The Southern troops began to melt away as the end became clear. On April 2, Grant ordered an attack on Petersburg and broke the Confederate line. Lee and his shrinking army were able to escape but Lee sent a message to Jefferson Davis saying that Richmond could no longer be defended and that he should evacuate the city. That night Jefferson Davis and his cabinet set fire to everything of military value in Richmond, then boarded a train to Danville, 140 miles to the south. Mobs took over the streets and set more fires. The next day, Northern soldiers arrived. And one day after that, Lincoln visited the city and sat in the office of Jefferson Davis.

Lee's Army of Northern Virginia, now reduced in size to 35,000 troops, had escaped to the west. They were starving, and Lee had asked the Confederate Commissary Department to have rations for his infantry waiting at the Amelia Courthouse. But when he arrived there, no rations awaited his troops. The Confederate government had no money to buy food for its army, and even if it did, there was not food to be found and now way to deliver its hungry troops. Lee and his men were forced to forage the countryside for food. The delay caused by his need to acquire food proved fatal to the Confederate effort.

Now 125,000 Union soldiers were surrounding Lee's army, whose numbers had been reduced to 25,000 troops and were steadily

南方很清楚联盟的不满。许多人认为，如果南方军队可以在选举之前坚持下去，就可能开始北方承认联邦独立的谈判。

1864 年 9 月 6 日，谢尔曼将军扣押了亚特兰大，一切都变了。战争的努力已经在北方方面有所转变，甚至麦克莱伦现在主张继续战争，取得军事胜利，而不是试图与联邦谈判达成和平协议。两个月后，林肯赢得了他在第一次选举中所获得的民众投票。他赢得了选举团 212 到 21 人，共和党赢得了国会的四分之三。第二个任期和结束战争的权力现在掌握在他手中。

APPOMATTOX : SOUTH SURRENDERS

谢尔曼在萨凡纳的胜利后，只有罗伯特·李·李的北弗吉尼亚州军队仍然是反对联军的实质军事力量。九个月前，彼得堡围困期间，格兰特和李在 53 英里的战壕中相遇。李的力量已经降到了五万，而格兰特的成长已经超过了十二万。

南部军队开始变得清澈透明。4 月 2 日，格兰特下令对彼得堡发动攻击，打破了联盟线。李和他萎缩的军队能够逃脱，但李发送信息给杰斐逊戴维斯说，里士满不能再被捍卫，他应该撤离这个城市。那天晚上，杰斐逊·戴维斯和他的内阁为列治文的一切军事价值而着火，然后乘坐火车前往南部 140 英里的丹尼尔。暴徒夺取了大街小巷。第二天北方士兵到了。有一天，林肯就到了这个城市，坐在了杰斐逊·戴维斯的办公室里。

现在，北维吉亚州的军队现在已经减少到 35000 人，逃到了西方。他们饿死了，李先生要求联邦商务部在阿米利亚法院等候他的步兵口粮。但是当他到达那里时，他的部队没有配给他们。联邦政府没有钱为其军队购买食物，即使是这样，没有找到食物，现在没有办法提供饥饿的部队。李和他的男人被迫为农村供粮食物。他需要获得食物所造成的延误对联盟的努力来说是致命的。

现在有 125,000 名联军士兵围绕着李军，数量减少到 25000 人，稳步下降。不过，李决定最后一次尝试爆

falling. Still, Lee decided to make one last attempt to break out. On April 9, the remaining Confederate Army, under John Gordon, drove back Union cavalry blocking the road near the village of **Appomattox Court House**. But beyond them were 50,000 Union infantry, and as many or more were closing in on Lee from his rear. It was over and Lee knew it.

Lee sent a note to Grant, and later that afternoon they met in the home of Wilmer McLean. Grant offered generous **terms of surrender**. Confederate officers and soldiers could go home, taking with them their horses, side arms, and personal possessions. Also, Grant guaranteed their immunity from prosecution for treason. At the conclusion of the ceremony, the two men saluted each other and parted. Grant then sent three days' worth of food rations to the 25,000 Confederate soldiers. The official surrender ceremony occurred three days later, when Lee's troops stacked their rifles and battle flags. The war was over, and the hard road toward rebuilding the South began.

CONCLUSION

The war ended in total defeat for the South. Their armies were defeated on the battlefield. Their cities were destroyed. Their economy was devastated by the loss of slave labor and a crippling blockade. But did it have to end that way? Could the South have done things differently to produce a different outcome? If Lincoln and the leaders of the Union armies had made different choices would the war have ended differently?

What do you think? Could the South have won the Civil War?

发。4月9日，在约翰·戈登（John Gordon）下的剩下的联邦军开车返回联盟骑兵，阻挡了 Appomattox 法院村庄附近的道路。但是超过他们的是 50,000 联盟步兵，还有许多人从后方关上了李。结束了，李知道了。

李先生向格兰特寄了一张纸条，当天下午他们在麦克莱恩麦克莱恩的家中见面。格兰特提供慷慨的投降条件。同盟军官可以回家，带着他们的马，双臂和个人财物。此外，格兰特还保证免除叛国罪的起诉。仪式结束时，两名男子相互敬礼，分手。格兰特然后向 25,000 名同盟士兵派出了三天的粮食配给。官方投降仪式在三天后发生，当时李的军队堆放了他们的步枪和战旗。战争结束了，重建南方的艰难道路开始了。

结论

战争结束了南方的彻底失败。他们的军队在战场上被打败了。他们的城市被毁了他们的经济受到奴隶劳动的丧失和严重的封锁的破坏。但是它必须以这种方式结束吗？南方可以做不同的事情来产生不同的结果吗？如果林肯和联盟军队的领导人做出不同的选择，那么这场战争会不同呢？

你怎么看？南方能否赢得内战？

Watch a reenactment of Pickett's Charge

PEOPLE

George McClellan: General who led the Union army at the start of the war. He infuriated Lincoln with his unwillingness to lead his troops into battle. Eventually Lincoln fired him.

Army of the Potomac: The Union army that did most of the fighting in Virginia against General Lee. It was named after the Potomac River that separates Maryland and Virginia.

American Red Cross: An organization that provides free healthcare and support to soldiers and people affected by war or disaster. It was founded by Clara Barton during the Civil War.

Clara Barton: Nurse and founder of the American Red Cross.

Peace Democrats: Also called Copperheads, they were Democrats in the North who wanted to end the war and make peace with the South.

Ulysses S. Grant: General who led the Union armies at the end of the war. He won the Battle of Vicksburg and Lincoln promoted him to commander of all of the Union Armies. He accepted Lee's surrender at the end of the war and later was elected president.

William Tecumseh Sherman: Northern general who led his army through the South destroying everything he could – farms, railroads, etc. – in an effort to prevent the South from having the means of waging war.

人

乔治·麦克莱伦：战争开始时领导联盟军的总理。他不情愿地带领他的部队进入战斗，他激怒了林肯。林肯最终解雇了他。

波托马克军队：在弗吉尼亚州大部分战斗的联盟军对李将军。它是以马托兰和弗吉尼亚州之后的波托马克河命名的。

美国红十字会：为受战争或灾难影响的士兵和人民提供免费医疗和支持的组织。它是在内战期间由克拉拉巴顿创立的。

护士和美国红十字会的创始人克拉拉·巴顿（Clara Barton）。

和平民主党人：也被称为 Copperheads，他们是北方民主人士，想要结束战争，和平与南方。

尤利西斯·格兰特：在战争结束时领导联盟军队的将军。他赢得了维克斯堡战役，林肯将他升格为所有联盟军的指挥官。他接受了李在战争结束时的投降，后来当选为总统。

William Tecumseh 谢尔曼：领导他的军队穿过南方的北方将军摧毁了他所有的一切 - 农场，铁路等，以防止南方发动战争。

KEY IDEAS

Blockade: Using a navy to prevent ships from entering or exiting a port.

Draft: A process in which the government forces people to join the military.

Inflation: When the prices of good increase over time.

Anaconda Plan: The North's strategy to blockade Southern ports to prevent trade and resupply.

High Tide of the Confederacy: A term used to describe the Battle of Gettysburg, and especially Pickett's Charge. It was the closest the South ever came to military victory in the war. Although far from over, after the battle the war turned in the North's favor.

Terms of Surrender: The agreement made by two armies or nations to formally end a war.

Writ of Habeas Corpus: A legal term that means "Show me the Body." It means that the government cannot accuse you of a crime and then hold you in jail indefinitely before giving you a trial.

主要思想

封锁：使用海军防止船只进入或离开港口。

草案：政府迫使人民加入军队的过程。

通货膨胀：当价格随着时间的推移而好转。

蟒蛇计划：北方封锁南方港口防止贸易和补给的战略。

联邦高潮：用来描述葛底斯堡战役的术语，特别是皮克特的指控。这是南方战争中最接近的军事胜利。战争虽然远没有结束，但战争结束了北方的青睐。

投降条件：两军或两国正式结束战争的协议。

人身保护令：人身保护令的法律术语是指"告诉我身体"，这意味着政府不能指责你犯罪，然后在审判之前无限期地将你关进监狱。

WAS THE CIVIL WAR A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF SLAVERY?

📍

LOCATIONS	**地点**

Confederacy: The Confederate States of America. The slave-holding states from the South that seceded.

联邦：联邦各州。来自南方的奴隶控制国家已经分裂。

Union: The United States of America. The North including the four border states which had slaves but did not secede.

联盟：美利坚合众国。北方包括四个边界国家，有奴隶，但没有脱离奴隶。

Appomattox Court House: The small town in Virginia where Lee surrendered to Grant.

Appomattox 法院：在弗吉尼亚州的小镇，李先生投降给格兰特。

Richmond: The capital city of Virginia and of the Confederacy.

里士满：弗吉尼亚州和联邦的首府。

📅

EVENTS	**活动**

First Battle of Bull Run: The first major battle between the armies of the North and South. It ended in a victory for the South and demonstrated that neither side would have an easy victory.

第一次公牛战役：南北军第一次大战。结束了对南方的胜利，并表明双方都不会有一个容易的胜利。

Draft Riots: Riots that happened in 1863 in major cities of the North, especially in New York City when the government enforced conscription into the army. They demonstrated that the war was not universally popular.

暴动草案：1863 年发生在北方主要城市的骚乱，特别是在纽约市政府强制征兵。他们表明战争并不普遍。

Battle of Gettysburg: The turning point battle of the war. Lee led his army into Pennsylvania hoping to force the North to give up, but lost the battle.

葛底斯堡战役：战争的转折点。李领导他的军队进入宾夕法尼亚州希望强迫北方放弃，但失去了战斗。

Battle of Vicksburg: A major victory for the Union army in the South. Vicksburg was a city along the Mississippi River. After it fell to the North, the Union controlled shipping on the river and was able to split the South in two.

维克斯堡之战：南联盟军队的重大胜利。维克斯堡是沿密西西比河的一个城市。在北部下降后，联盟控制着河上的航运，并将南方分成两个。

Food Riots: Riots that occurred in the major cities of the South, especially led by women when the blockade of Southern ports by the Union navy prevented enough food from being imported. These were also sometimes called the Bread Riots.

食物骚乱：发生在南方主要城市的骚乱，特别是妇女领导的情况，当时由联盟海军封锁南方港口阻止了进口食物。这些有时也被称为面包暴动。

Pickett's Charge: Lee's final attack on the third day of the Battle of Gettysburg. Often called the High Tide of the Confederacy, it was a disaster for the South, ending in defeat and the loss of thousands of troops.

皮克特的指控：李勋爵在葛底斯堡战役的第三天进行了最后的攻击。经常被称为联邦高潮，这是南方的一场灾难，最终失败了，数千人的丧生。

Sherman's March to the Sea: In 1864 General Sherman led his Union army through Georgia destroying everything he could. He started in Atlanta and his destination was the city of Savannah on the coast. He became of a hero of the North and villain across the South.

谢尔曼三月到海：1864 年谢尔曼将军通过格鲁吉亚联军，摧毁了他所能做的一切。他开始在亚特兰大，他的目的地是海岸的萨凡纳市。他成为北方的英雄，南部的小人。

Siege of Petersburg: The long attack on the City of Petersburg south of Richmond, Virginia. It was devastating for both armies, but due to the South's inability to replace lost soldiers, proved to be a death blow to Lee's army.

彼得堡围困：对弗吉尼亚州里士满南部圣彼得堡市的长期袭击。这对两军来说是毁灭性的，但由于南方无力取代失踪的士兵，这被证明是对李军的一个打击。

5 F I F T H   Q U E S T I O N
WHAT DID THE WAR MEAN?

WAS THE
CIVIL WAR
A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT
FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF
SLAVERY?

INTRODUCTION

We like to apply meaning to important events. We look back at the Revolution and say that it was about independence, standing up for our right to self-determination, to be represented in government, and to life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness. We apply meaning to wars as well.   World War Two was about defeating hatred in the form of Nazi Germany.

Often, in the face of tragedy, especially disasters and war, we look for some greater meaning that will help us understand the events. Earthquakes offer lessons about safe construction practices. Sometimes, events are cautionary tales – "don't try that again."

What was the Civil War about? Was it a moral crusade to end the evils of slavery?   What is about preserving the Union that the Founding Fathers and the Revolutionary Generation had worked so hard to establish? What is about preserving the rights of people to elect their leaders? What is a punishment from God? Was it a terrible mistake that shows us how not to deal with crisis?

What do you think? What did the war mean?

介绍

我们喜欢对重要的事件应用意义。我们回头看看革命，说是关于独立，站在我们的自决权，在政府中代表，生活，自由和追求幸福。我们也适用于战争的意义。第二次世界大战是以纳粹德国的形式击败仇恨。

通常，面对悲剧，特别是灾难和战争，我们寻求更大的意义，帮助我们了解事件。地震提供有关安全施工实践的经验教训。有时，事件是警示故事‐"别再试了。

内战是什么？是否是结束奴隶制罪恶的道义呢？保护联盟，创始人和革命派一直努力建立什么呢？维护人民选举领导人的权利是什么？什么是上帝的惩罚？这是一个可怕的错误，告诉我们如何不处理危机？

你怎么看？战争是什么意思？

WHAT THEY FOUGHT FOR

Popular culture - poetry, books, television, film - as well as the interests of politicians have often distorted the motivations of individual soldiers. Sometimes they have been portrayed as heroic liberators of slaves struggling to be free, or alternatively evil planters wishing to maintain chattel slavery. Like many things however, the truth is far more complicated than the simplistic summaries provided by politicians, poets and screen writers.

In recent years historians have been able to read over thousands of letters that soldiers from both the North and the South sent home during the War and we are now able to more accurately describe what motivated so many thousands of people to risk their lives.

For some, the war was about **ideology**. Northerners believed that secession was unconstitutional and fought to prevent the southern states from leaving the Union. And across the battle lines from them there were Southerners who believed in states' rights, that the Northern government was tyrannical, and that the right of the South to secede was as absolute as had been the right of the 13 Colonies to declare independence in 1776.

For others, the war was about slavery. Undoubtedly for Southern political leaders - the slaveholding elite - the war was a means to preserve their wealth and way of life. But for infantrymen of the South who owned few or no slaves, slavery was important all the same. They believed that African Americans were inferior to whites and the North's efforts to end slavery was a threat to their sense of self-worth.

Slavery was important for Northern troops as well, especially for those who were believers in the fight to abolish slavery. As the war went on, the struggle was seen more and more as an epic moral battle against a terrible evil. Some Northerners cast themselves as instruments of God, punishing the South and liberating souls. For free African Americans in the North, and for slaves who escaped and joined the Union armies, the destruction of slavery can hardly be overstated.

For others, the war was more personal. Many man fought for their homes and their families. Especially in the South, where most of the fighting took place, soldiers did not see their sacrifice in terms of ideological, political or moral terms, but simply as protecting their loved ones.

Sullivan Ballou, a major in the Union army eloquently summarized the feelings of many who fought in the war in a letter he wrote to

他们想要什么

大众文化 - 诗歌，书籍，电视，电影以及政治家的利益往往扭曲了个别士兵的动机。有时候，他们被描绘成为挣扎自由的奴隶的英勇解放者，或者是希望维持动产奴隶制的邪恶种植者。然而，像许多事情一样，事实比政治家，诗人和屏幕作家提供的简单的总结要复杂得多。

近年来，历史学家已经能够阅读数千封来自北方和南方的士兵在战争期间送回家的信件，我们现在能够更准确地描述激发了成千上万的人冒着生命危险的动机。

对于一些人来说，这场战争是关于意识形态的。北方人认为，分裂国家是违宪的，为了防止南方国家离开联盟而进行战斗。在他们的战斗线上，有南方人相信国家的权利，北方政府是暴虐的，南方分离的权利与 13 个殖民地在 1776 年宣布独立的权利是一样的绝对。

对于别人来说，这场战争是关于奴隶制的。毫无疑问，南方政治领袖 - 奴隶精英 - 战争是维护自己财富和生活方式的手段。但对于拥有很少或没有奴隶的南方的步兵，奴隶制也是一回事。他们认为，非裔美国人不如白人，而北方为制止奴隶制而作出的努力，是对自我意识的威胁。

奴隶制对北部军队也是重要的，特别是那些信奉消灭奴隶制的信徒。随着战争的进行，斗争越来越多地被看作是对可怕的邪恶的史诗般的道德战争。一些北方人把自己当作上帝的工具，惩罚南方和解放灵魂。对于北美的自由的非裔美国人，以及逃脱并加入联盟军队的奴隶，奴隶制的破坏难以夸大。

对于别人来说，战争更加个人化。许多人为家里和家人而战。特别是在大多数战斗发生的南方，士兵在思想，政治或道德上都没有看到他们的牺牲，而只是保护他们的亲人。

苏联军团的沙利文·巴卢（Sullivan Ballou）雄辩地总结了许多在战争中为他写信给妻子的一封信，他在

his wife, just before he was killed at the First Battle of Bull Run in 1861. He wrote, "Sarah, my love for you is deathless, it seems to bind me to you with mighty cables that nothing but Omnipotence could break; and yet my love of Country comes over me like a strong wind and bears me irresistibly on with all these chains to the battlefield. The memories of the blissful moments I have spent with you come creeping over me, and I feel most gratified to God and to you that I have enjoyed them so long. And hard it is for me to give them up and burn to ashes the hopes of future years, when God willing, we might still have lived and loved together and seen our sons grow up to honorable manhood around us. I have, I know, but few and small claims upon **Divine Providence**, but something whispers to me — perhaps it is the wafted prayer of my little Edgar — that I shall return to my loved ones unharmed. If I do not, my dear Sarah, never forget how much I love you, and when my last breath escapes me on the battlefield, it will whisper your name."

Whatever their reasons, the men and women who struggled through the four terrible years of war demonstrated tremendous devotion. In all, over one million Americans died, more than three percent of the entire population of the country at that time.

EMANCIPATION: THE END OF SLAVERY

Looking back at the Civil War with the benefit of more than 150 years of hindsight, it is easy to say that the war was about ending slavery and that emancipation was going to be the obvious outcome of the war. This this was not at all obvious then.

Prior to the Civil War, Abraham Lincoln attempted to abstain from the debate over slavery, arguing that he had no constitutional authority to intervene. As the war progressed, emancipation remained a risky political act that had little public support. Lincoln faced strong opposition from **Copperhead Democrats**, who demanded an immediate peace settlement with the Confederacy. They believed that it would be much better to simply let the South secede and avoid war altogether. Many recent immigrants in the North also opposed emancipation, viewing freed slaves as competition for scarce jobs.

Within the Republican Party, however, the **Radical Republicans**, led by House Republican leader **Thaddeus Stevens**, put strong pressure on Lincoln to end slavery quickly. One of the Radicals Republicans' most persuasive arguments was that the South's economy would be destroyed were it to lose slave labor.

1861 年第一次公牛战役之前被杀害的人的感觉。他写道："莎拉，我对你的爱是死亡的，似乎是用强大的电线束缚着你，只有万能可以破坏，而我对国家的爱就像一场强风，让我无法抗拒所有这些连锁的战场。我和你一起度过的幸福的回忆回到了我的肩上，对上帝和你，我感到非常高兴，我很享受他们，而且很难让他们放弃和燃烧灰心，希望在未来的岁月里，当上帝愿意的时候，我们可能还会一起生活和爱在一起，看到我们的儿子在我们身边长大成人荣耀，我知道，但是对神圣的上帝而言，只有少数和少量的要求，这是我小小的埃德加的祷告我将不受伤害地回到我的亲人身上。如果我不这样做，亲爱的莎拉，永远不会忘记我多么爱你，当我最后的呼吸在战场上逃脱了我的时候，它会耳语你的名字。

无论他们的理由如何，在四个可怕的战争年代奋斗的男女都表现出极大的奉献精神。总共有一百多万美国人死亡，当时全国人口的百分之三以上。

动员：奴隶制结束

回顾内战 150 多年的后见之明，很容易说战争是关于结束奴隶制，解放将是战争的明显结果。这显然不是很明显的。

在内战之前，亚伯拉罕·林肯试图放弃对奴隶制的辩论，认为他没有宪法权力进行干预。随着战争的进行，解放仍然是一个很少受到公众支持的危险的政治行为。林肯遭到 Copperhead 民主党的强烈反对，他呼吁立即同联邦和平解决。他们认为，只要让南方分裂，完全避免战争，会更好一些。北方最近的许多移民也反对解放，看待自由奴隶作为对稀缺工作的竞争。

然而，在共和党内，共和党共和党领导人蒂德斯·史蒂文生领导的激进共和党人对林肯施加强大的压力，迅速结束奴隶制。激进共和党最有说服力的论点之一是，南方的经济将被毁灭，是因为失去了奴隶劳动。

Congress passed several laws between 1861 and 1863 that aided the growing movement toward emancipation. Despite his concerns that premature attempts at emancipation would weaken his support and entail the loss of crucial border states - the slave states that had decided to remain in the Union, Lincoln signed these acts into law. The first of these laws to be implemented was the First Confiscation Act of August 1861, which authorized the confiscation of any Confederate property, including slaves, by Union forces. In March 1862, Congress approved a law which forbade Union Army officers from returning fugitive slaves to their owners. The laws had their intended effect. As Union armies moved through the South, thousands of slaves left their homes and fled to the approaching Union troops and the South's economy suffered.

The following month, Congress declared that the federal government would **compensate** slave owners who freed their slaves. Moderate Republicans accepted Lincoln's plan for gradual, compensated emancipation, which was put into effect in the District of Columbia. In June 1862, Congress passed a law to emancipate slaves in the territories of the West. What Lincoln really needed, however, was a major military victory that would demonstrate to the country, and to France and Britain, that the North was going to win on the battlefield and that emancipation would be a moral justification for the bloodshed that the war had unleashed.

That victory came in September or 1862 at Antietam. No foreign country wants to ally with a potential losing power. By achieving victory, the Union demonstrated that the South would probably lose. As a result, the British did not recognize the Confederate States of America, and Antietam became one of the war's most important diplomatic battles, as well as one of the bloodiest. Five days after the battle, Lincoln decided to issue the **Emancipation Proclamation**, effective January 1, 1863. Unless the Confederate States returned to the Union by that day, he proclaimed their slaves "shall be then, thenceforward and forever free."

It is sometimes said that the Emancipation Proclamation freed no slaves. In a way, this is true. The proclamation would only apply to the Confederate States, as an act to seize enemy resources. By freeing slaves in the Confederacy, Lincoln was actually freeing people he did not directly control. The way he explained the Proclamation made it acceptable to much of the Union army. He emphasized emancipation as a way to shorten the war by taking Southern resources and hence reducing Confederate strength. Even McClellan supported the policy as a soldier. Lincoln made no

国会通过了 1861 年至 1863 年间的几项法律，协助日益增长的解放运动。尽管他担心过早的解放企图将削弱他的支持，并导致失去关键的边界国家 - 即决定留在联盟的奴隶国家，林肯将这些行为纳入法律。这些执法的第一项法律是 1861 年 8 月的"第一次没收令"，授权联盟部队没收任何同盟财产，包括奴隶。 1862 年 3 月，国会通过了一项法律，禁止联军军官将逃亡奴隶交回业主。法律有其预期的效果。随着联盟军队向南移动，成千上万的奴隶离开家园，逃到了接近的联盟部队，南部的经济遭受了痛苦。

接下来的一个月，国会宣布联邦政府将补偿奴隶主解雇奴隶。中等共和党人接受了林肯在哥伦比亚特区实行的逐步补偿解放计划。 1862 年 6 月，国会通过了解放西方领土奴隶的法律。然而，林肯真的需要的是向国家，法国和英国表明北方将在战场上取胜的重大军事胜利，解放将是对战争所造成的流血的道义上的理由释放。

这场胜利是在 9 月或 1862 年在安提坦举行的。没有一个国家想要有潜在的失去力量的盟友。通过实现胜利，联盟表明南方可能会输。结果，英国人不承认美国国家，而且安提坦成为战争中最重要的外交战争之一，也是最血腥的战争之一。在战后五天，林肯决定发布"解放宣言"，自 1863 年 1 月 1 日起生效。除非当时联邦回国，他宣布奴隶"当然是永远自由"。

有时候说，解放宣言没有摆脱奴隶。在某种程度上，这是真的。宣誓只适用于联邦国家，作为夺取敌方资源的行为。林肯释放了联邦的奴隶，实际上是释放了他没有直接控制的人。他解释"公告"的方式使大部分联盟军都能接受。他强调解放是通过采取南方资源缩短战争，从而减少联盟实力的一种方式。麦克莱伦甚至支持这个政策作为一个士兵。林肯没有向仍在联盟的密苏里州，肯塔基州，马里兰州和特拉华州的奴隶提供这种自由。

such offer of freedom to the slaves in the border states of Missouri, Kentucky, Maryland and Delaware that were still in the Union.

The Emancipation Proclamation created a climate where the destruction of slavery was seen as one of the major objectives of the war. Overseas, the North now seemed to have the greatest moral cause. Even if a foreign government wanted to intervene on behalf of the South, its population might object. The Proclamation itself freed very few slaves, but it was the death knell for slavery in the United States. Eventually, the Emancipation Proclamation led to the proposal and ratification of the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution, which formally abolished slavery throughout the land.

"解放宣言"创造了一种气氛，将奴隶制的破坏视为战争的主要目标之一。在海外，北方似乎有最伟大的道德事业。即使外国政府想要代表南方干预，其人口也许会反对。宣告本身释放了很少的奴隶，但这是在美国的奴隶制的死亡诀窍。最后，"解放宣言"最终提出和批准了"宪法"第十三修正案，正式废除了整个土地的奴隶制。

Secondary Source: Painting

Henry Louis Stephens's 1963 painting of a man reading the Emancipation Proclamation.

二来源：绘画

亨利·路易斯·史蒂芬斯（Henry Louis Stephens）1963年的"解放宣言"一书。

Predictably, the Confederates were initially outraged by the Emancipation Proclamation and used it as further justification for their rebellion. The Proclamation was also immediately denounced by Copperhead Democrats, a more extreme wing of the Northern Democratic faction of the Democratic Party that opposed the war and hoped to restore the Union peacefully via

可以预见的是，联盟最初被"解放宣言"感到愤怒，并将其作为他们反叛的进一步理由。"宣言"也立即被 Copperhead 民主党谴责，这是民主党北民主派派反对战争的更极端的一面，并希望通过联邦接受奴隶制来平息地恢复联盟。此外，这些民主党人将"宣言"视为违宪的滥用总统权力。围绕"解放宣言"的争议以及

federal acceptance of the institution of slavery. Additionally, these Democrats viewed the Proclamation as an unconstitutional abuse of Presidential power. Controversy surrounding the Emancipation Proclamation, as well as military defeats suffered by the Union, caused many moderate Democrats to abandon Lincoln and join the more extreme Copperheads in the 1862 elections. Democrats gained 28 seats in the House or Representatives in the 1862 election cycle, as well as the governorship of New York. The outcome of the elections showed that abolition was still not the primary factor that motivated most Northerners to continue fighting.

联盟遭受的军事失败，造成许多温和的民主党人放弃了林肯，并在 1862 年的选举中加入了更加极端的铜头兵。民主党人在 1862 年的选举周期中获得了众议院或代表的 28 席，以及纽约市的总统。选举的结果表明，废除仍然不是促使大多数北方人继续战斗的主要因素。

Some Copperheads advocated violent resistance to the wartime effort, which greatly increased tensions between pro-war and anti-war factions. Though no organized attacks ever materialized, sensationalist politics did give rise to the Charleston Riot in Illinois during March 1864. Many Copperhead leaders were arrested and held in military prisons without trial, sometimes for months at a time.

铜头倡导暴力抗战，大大增加了反战和反战派别之间的紧张关系。虽然没有有组织的攻击实现，但煽情政治确实在 1864 年 3 月引起了伊利诺伊州的查尔斯顿暴动。许多 Copperhead 领导人在没有审判的情况下被逮捕并在军事监狱被关押，有时候几个月。

In 1863 issued General Order Number 38 in Ohio, which made it an offense to criticize the war in any way. The order was then used to arrest a congressman from Ohio, Clement Vallandigham, when he criticized the order itself. Additionally, a number of Copperheads were accused of treason for criticizing the war by Republicans in a series of trials that took place during 1864. As has been the case in many wars, the right of free speech was severely limited during the Civil War by Lincoln and his supporters. At one point, Lincoln even suspended the **writ of habeas corpus** which meant that he could hold people in prison without a trial. The Supreme Court overturned this action as clearly unconstitutional, but the campaign to suppress opposition to the war is remembered as a stain on Lincoln's record.

1863 年在俄亥俄州发布了第 38 号总统令，以任何方式批评战争是违法的。当时他批评了这个秩序，然后用来逮捕来自俄亥俄州的克莱特·瓦兰迪加姆的国会议员。此外，一些 Copperheads 被指控在共和党人在 1864 年进行的一系列审判中批评这场战争的叛国。正如许多战争一样，在内战期间，言论自由的权利受到严重限制和他的支持者。有一次，林肯甚至暂停了人身保护令的令状，这意味着他可以不经审判将监禁人进监狱。最高法院推翻这项行动显然是违宪的，但是压制反对战争的运动被认为是林肯记录上的污点。

THE GETTYSBURG ADDRESS

GETTYSBURG 地址

After the Battle of Gettysburg in July of 1863, work began to move the bodies of the fallen soldiers from their makeshift graves scattered across the expansive battlefield to a single cemetery. As part of a ceremony to formally dedicate the cemetery, President Lincoln was invited "to formally set apart these grounds to their sacred use by a few appropriate remarks."

在 1863 年 7 月的葛底斯堡战役之后，工作开始将堕落的士兵的身体从分散在广阔战场上的临时坟墓移到一个公墓。作为正式献身公墓的仪式的一部分，林肯总统被邀请"正式将这些理由用几个适当的言论将其分割为神圣使用"。

Primary Source: Photograph

The only known photograph of Abraham Lincoln at Gettysburg. He is in the center looking down to the left.

主要来源：照片

亚伯拉罕·林肯唯一一已知的照片在葛底斯堡。他在中心向左看。

So it was, that on November 19, 1863, four and a half months after the Union armies defeated those of the Confederacy at the Battle of Gettysburg that Lincoln delivered the **Gettysburg Address**, one of the most remembered and quoted speeches in history. Actually, President Lincoln's carefully crafted address was not the day's main event. His speech was just over two minutes long and came after a two-hour speech by famed **orator** Edward Everett. Even Lincoln said that people "would not long remember" what he had to say, but today it is Lincoln's ten sentences, and not Everett's words that remain important.

Beginning with the now-iconic phrase "Four score and seven years ago," a reference to the Declaration of Independence in 1776, Lincoln reiterated the principles of human equality espoused by the Founding Fathers. He looked back to the Revolution and cast the Civil War as "a new birth of freedom." Indeed, many historians agree with him, noting that while the Revolution of the 1770s produced an independent United States, the Civil War demonstrated that it could survive.

But Lincoln also redefined the War as a struggle not just for the Union, but also for the principle of human equality, thus tying together his initial stated purpose for the war - to preserve the Union - with the abolition of slavery.

Lincoln ended his short address with a reminder that the war was a test of the strength of the Founding Fathers' trust in representative democracy, saying that victory would show that

所以 1863 年 11 月 19 日，在联盟军队击败葛底斯堡战役联盟的四个半月之后，林肯发表了葛底斯堡地址，这是历史上最有记载和引用的演讲之一。其实，林肯总统精心制作的地址并不是当天的主要事件。他的演讲刚刚超过两分钟，来自着名歌唱家爱德华·埃弗雷特（Edward Everett）的两小时演讲。甚至林肯也表示，人们不会忘记他不得不说的话，但今天是林肯的十句话，而不是埃弗雷特的话仍然是重要的。

从现在的标语"四分七年"开始，提到 1776 年的"独立宣言"，林肯重申了创始人所倡导的人类平等原则。他回顾了革命，把内战当作"自由的新诞生"。事实上，许多历史学家同意他的观点，指出在 17 世纪 70 年代的革命制造了一个独立的美国时，内战表明它可以生存下去。

但林肯也将战争重新定义为不仅为联盟而斗争，而且也是以人的平等原则为契机，将战争的最初明确的目的与维和联盟结合在一起，废除了奴隶制。

林肯结束了他的简短讲话，提醒说战争是对创始人对代议制民主的信任的考验，说胜利将显示"人民群众，人民群众不得灭亡"从地球"。

"government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth."

LINCOLN'S SECOND INAUGURAL ADDRESS

Abraham Lincoln delivered his **second inaugural address** on March 4, 1865. At a time when victory over secessionists in the American Civil War was within days and slavery in all of the Union was near an end, Lincoln's speech was not celebratory, boastful or proud.   Instead, he was filled with sadness.   He rejected triumphalism and reminded his audience of the unmistakable evil of slavery. Throughout his speech he made numerous references to the Bible and to how he saw God at work in the war. It is considered one of the finest speeches in American history.

Lincoln wondered what God's will might have been in allowing the war to happen and why it had assumed the terrible dimensions it had taken. He reiterated the cause of the war, slavery, in saying "slaves constituted a peculiar and powerful interest. All knew that this interest was somehow the cause of the war." But Lincoln was cautious not to cast blame entirely on the South. He alluded to the New Testament saying, "but let us judge not, that we be not judged" and reminded Northerners that before the war their own textile mills had grown wealthy processing cotton that slaves had picked.

Lincoln suggested that the death and destruction wrought by the war was God's way of punishing Americans for having embraced slavery, wondering if God might be imposing an eye-for-an-eye punishment and letting the war continue "until every drop of blood drawn with the lash shall be paid by another drawn with the sword."

Lincoln believed it is impossible for humans to know exactly what God's purposes are but that it was his, and everyone's role to move forward to rebuild the country in the best way they knew how. In closing his address, Lincoln looked forward to his vision of Reconstruction. He believed that punishing the South would be counterproductive, and was the wrong course of action. Again he alluded to scripture saying, "let us strive on to... bind up the nation's wounds... to care for him who shall have borne the battle and for his widow and his orphan, to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations."

Lincoln's sense that the God's will was unknowable, however, stood in marked contrast to sentiments at the time. In most people's minds, both sides of the Civil War assumed that they

LINCOLN 的第二个不寻常的地址

亚伯拉罕·林肯在 1865 年 3 月 4 日发表了第二次就职演说。在美国内战中分裂主义者的胜利几天之内，所有联盟的奴隶制都接近尾声，林肯的演讲不是庆祝，自豪或自豪。相反，他充满了悲伤。他拒绝了凯旋，并提醒观众说明了奴役的无可挑剔的罪恶。在他的演讲中，他多次提到圣经，以及他在战争中如何看待上帝。它被认为是美国历史上最好的演讲之一。

林肯想知道上帝的旨意可能会在什么时候允许战争发生，以及为什么它承担了可怕的维度。他重申了战争，奴隶制的原因，说"奴隶构成了一个特殊和强大的利益，都知道这种利益在某种程度上是战争的根源"。但林肯谨慎不要把责任完全归咎于南方。他提到新约说："不要让我们判断，我们不被判断"，并提醒北方，在战前，他们自己的纺织厂已经生长了这些奴隶选择的富有加工的棉花。

林肯认为，战争造成的死亡和破坏是上帝惩罚美国人接受奴隶制的方法，想知道上帝是否会施加眼睛的眼睛惩罚，让战争继续下去"，直到每一滴血液被抽出来鞭子必须用另外一把剑用剑支付。"

林肯认为，人类不可能准确地知道上帝的目的是什么，但是他是这样做的，每个人都有能力以最好的方式重建国家。林肯在结束他的发言时期望着他的重建视野。他认为惩罚南方会适得其反，是错误的行动。他再次提到经文说："让我们努力……束缚国家的伤口……照顾他应付战争的人，为了他的寡妇和孤儿，做所有可能实现和珍惜的一切在我们自己和所有国家之间实现公正和持久的和平"。
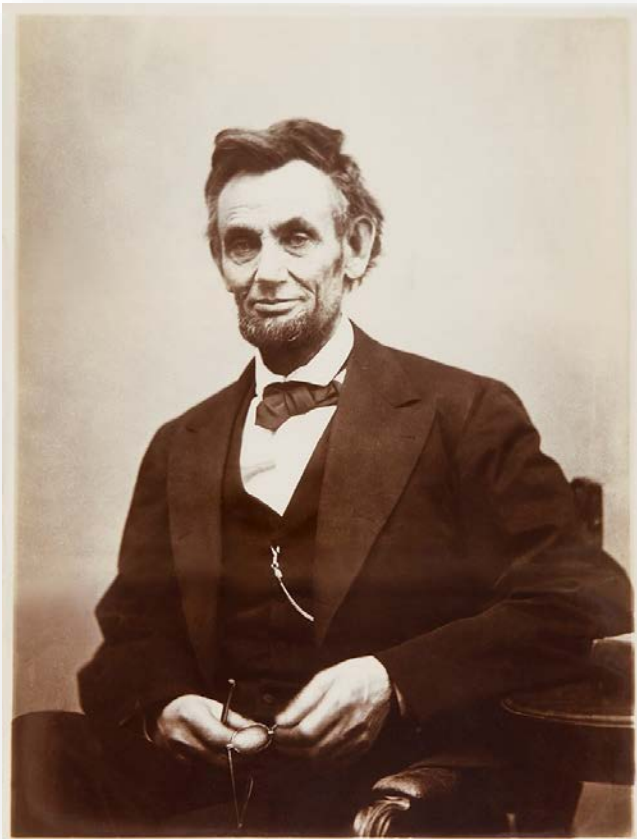
然而，林肯的感觉是神的旨意是不可知的，与当时的情绪形成鲜明的对比。在大多数人的脑海里，内战双方都认为他们可以读神的旨意，并假定他支持他们的

could read God's will and assumed that he supported their causes. Julia Ward Howe's popular song "Battle Hymn of the Republic" expressed sentiments common in the North, that the Union was waging a righteous war - that the Union armies were acting as the Hand of God to destroy the evils of secession and slavery.

Like many of his earlier speeches, in his last major address Lincoln was eloquent, succinct, and modest. He described Reconstruction as compassionate rather than punishing, but ultimately it was Republicans in Congress, not Lincoln who would determine the fate of the effort to rebuild the South.

原因。朱莉娅·沃德·霍伊（Julia Ward Howe）的流行歌曲"共和国之歌"表达了北方共同的情绪，联盟正在进行正义的战争 - 联盟军队正在扮演上帝的手，摧毁分裂国家和奴隶制的罪恶。

就像许多早期的演讲一样，林肯的最后一个主要讲话是雄辩，简洁，谦虚。他将重建描述为同情而不是惩罚，但最终是共和党在国会，而不是林肯谁将决定重建南方的努力的命运。

Primary Source: Photograph
The last known photograph of President Lincoln, taken just a few days before his assassination in 1865.

主要来源：照片
林肯总统的最后一张已知照片是在 1865 年被暗杀前几天拍摄的。

LINCOLN'S ASSASSINATION

On April 11, 1865, two days after Lee's Surrender at Appomattox, Lincoln delivered a speech outlining his plans for peace and reconstruction. In the audience was **John Wilkes Booth**, a successful actor, born and raised in Maryland. Booth was a fervent believer in slavery and white supremacy. Upon hearing Lincoln's

林肯的审判

林书豪在 1865 年 4 月 11 日发表两天的消息后两天，Lincoln 发表了关于和平与重建计划的演讲。在观众中，约翰·威尔克斯·布斯（John Wilkes Booth）是一位在马里兰州出生和长大的成功演员。布斯是坦白相信奴隶制和白人至上的信仰。听到林肯的话，他对一

5 **WHAT DID THE WAR MEAN?**

WAS THE
CIVIL WAR
A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT
FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF
SLAVERY?

words, he said to a companion, "Now, by God, I'll put him through. That is the last speech he will ever make."

After failing in two attempts earlier in the year to kidnap the President, Booth decided Lincoln must be killed. His conspiracy was grand in design. Booth and his collaborators decided to assassinate the President, Vice President Andrew Johnson, and Secretary of State William Seward all in the same evening. Lincoln decided to attend a British comedy, Our American Cousin, at **Ford's Theater**. Ulysses S. Grant had planned to accompany the President and his wife, but during the day he decided to see his son in New Jersey. Attending the play that night with the Lincolns were Major Henry Rathbone and his fiancée, Clara Harris, the daughter of a prominent Senator.

In the middle of the play that night, Booth slipped into the entryway to the President's box, holding a dagger in his left hand and a Derringer pistol in his right. He fired the pistol six inches from Lincoln and slashed Rathbone's arm with his knife. Booth then vaulted over the front of the President's box, caught his right leg in a flag and landed on the stage, breaking his leg. He waved his dagger and shouted what is reported to be **sic semper tyrannis** — Latin for "thus always to tyrants." Some reported that he said, "The South is avenged." He then ran limping out of the theater, jumped on his horse, and rode off towards Virginia.

The bullet entered Lincoln's head just behind his left ear, tore through his brain and lodged just behind his right eye. The injury was mortal. Lincoln was brought to a boarding house across the street, where he died the next morning. The other targets escaped death. Lewis Powell, one of Booth's accomplices, went to Seward's house, stabbed and seriously wounded the Secretary of State, but Seward survived. Another accomplice, George Atzerodt, could not bring himself to attempt to assassinate Vice President Johnson.

Two weeks later, on April 26, Union cavalry trapped Booth in a Virginia tobacco barn. The soldiers had orders not to shoot and decided to burn him out of the barn. A fire was started. Before Booth could even react, Sergeant Boston Corbett took aim and fatally shot Booth. The dying assassin was dragged to a porch where his last words uttered were, "Useless ... useless!"

A train carried Lincoln's body on a circuitous path back home for burial in Springfield, Illinois. A mourning nation turned out by the hundreds of thousands to bid farewell to their President, the first to fall by an assassin's bullet.

个同伴说："现在，上帝，我会把他穿过，这是他将要做的最后一个演讲。"

今年早些时候，为了绑架总统，两次尝试失败后，布斯决定林肯必须被杀。他的阴谋在设计上是盛大的。布斯和他的合作者决定在同一天晚上暗杀总统，副总统安德鲁·约翰逊和国务卿威廉·西瓦德。林肯决定参加英国喜剧"美国表哥"，在福特剧院。尤利西斯·格兰特计划陪同总统和他的妻子，但白天他决定在新泽西看到他的儿子。当晚与林肯一起出演的是亨利·拉斯伯恩和他的未婚妻，克拉拉·哈里斯，一位着名的参议员的女儿。

在当晚的比赛中，布斯滑入总统的入口，左手拿着一把匕首，右边是一把德隆格手枪。他从林肯开了 6 英寸的手枪，用刀砍下了 Rathbone 的手臂。展台然后穿过总统盒子的前方，将他的右腿抓在旗帜上，降落在舞台上，打破了他的腿。他挥舞着他的匕首，并大声喊出所谓的"超级暴政"－拉丁语"因此永远是暴君"。有报道说他说"南方报复"。然后，他跑出剧院，跳上马，骑着弗吉尼亚去。

子弹进入林肯的头部，在他的左耳后面，撕裂了他的大脑，并在右眼后面。伤势是致命的。林肯被带到街对面的一个寄宿屋，第二天早上他去世了。其他目标逃脱死亡。布斯的同伙之一刘易斯鲍威尔去了西沃德的房子，刺伤了国务卿，严重伤害了他，但是苏瓦德幸存下来。另外一个共同党人阿泽图罗德也不敢试图暗杀约翰逊副总统。

两个星期后，4 月 26 日，联盟骑兵在弗吉尼亚州的烟草谷仓里困住了布斯。士兵们命令不要射杀，决定把他烧出谷仓。起火了在布斯甚至可以作出反应之前，波士顿科贝特警长瞄准并致命地打了布斯。垂死的刺客被拖到一个门廊，他最后一句话说的是"无用的...没用了！

一列火车在伊利诺伊州斯普林菲尔德市的一条迂回路径上载着林肯的尸体回到家中埋葬。一个哀悼的国家竟然成千上万，告别总统，第一个被刺客子弹击倒。

THE LEGACY OF THE CIVIL WAR

The Civil War was the bitterest war in American history by almost any definition. It has been called the "brothers' war," the "War between the States," or the "War of Northern Aggression." Strong feelings about the background, causes, fighting, and meaning of the Civil War continue to this day. For a long time, the number of deaths on both sides in the Civil War was estimated at slightly over 600,000, with another 400,000 suffering grievous wounds. Recently that estimate has been revised upward to 750,000, a figure upon which many preeminent historians now agree. In addition, millions of dollars' worth of property were destroyed, families were disrupted, fortunes were made and lost, and the country that emerged from the war in 1865 was very different from the country that had existed in 1860. Myths about the causes conduct and results of the war also persist into modern times. It is often difficult to separate the mythological from the factual history of the war, about which much is still being written.

In the immediate aftermath of the war its most serious consequence was undoubtedly the rage that swept across the South, manifesting itself in bitterness and hatred of all things associated with the Union. "Yankee" was a pejorative term, and "damn Yankee" was one of the milder epithets applied to anyone who came from the far side of the Mason-Dixon line. Not only had the South seen a huge portion of its young male population destroyed, along with homesteads, farms, factories and railroads, but after all the sacrifice and suffering that Southerners felt they had to endure, they were back in that hated Union. Furthermore, slavery, which had an indisputable role in secession and thus in the causes of the Civil War itself was as a result of the Thirteenth Amendment decreed to be gone forever.

Abraham Lincoln, considered by many to be America's greatest president, was viewed in the South as an enemy at best, and at worst as a "bloodthirsty **tyrant**." One Virginia woman expressed feelings very common at the end of the Civil War when she wrote in her diary: "I stood in the street in Richmond and watched the Yankees raise the flag over the capitol with tears running down my face, because I could remember a time when I loved that flag, and now I hate the very sight of it!" As Southerners viewed the history of the prewar years, secession and the war itself, they began the process of writing their own history of those terrible events, and came to adopt what is called the "**Lost Cause**," the idea that in the end the South had been right in its desire to govern itself and its "peculiar institution" of slavery. The idea, or as some term it, the myth of the Lost Cause is still present.

公民战争的辩护

内战几乎是任何定义的美国历史上的战争。这被称为"兄弟战争","国家之间的战争",还是"北方之战"。对于内战的背景,原因,战争和意义的强烈感情,至今仍然存在。长期以来,内战双方的死亡人数估计略高于 60 万人,另有 40 万人遇难。最近估计已经上调到 75 万,这是许多杰出的历史学家现在所同意的数字。此外,价值数百万美元的财产被摧毁,家庭遭到破坏,财富丧生,1865 年出现的战争国家与 1860 年存在的国家有很大的不同。关于原因行为的神话战争的结果也持续到现代。将神话与战争的事实历史分开是很困难的,还有很多事情仍然在写。

在战争之后,其最严重的后果无疑是横扫南方的愤怒,表现在与联盟有关的一切事物的痛苦和仇恨。"洋基"是一个贬义词,"死亡扬基"是适用于从梅森－迪克森线远端来的任何人的温和的谚语之一。不仅南部看到其年轻的男性人口的大部分被摧毁,连同宅基地,农场,工厂和铁路,但毕竟是南方人认为不得不忍受的牺牲和苦难,他们回到了那个讨厌的联盟。此外,由于第十三次修正案被命令永远消失,因此在分裂国家以及因此造成内战的原因中,不利争议的奴隶制也是如此。

亚伯拉罕·林肯被许多人认为是美国最伟大的总统,在南方被视为敌人,最糟糕的是"嗜血的暴君"。一位弗吉尼亚女子在内战结束时表达了非常普遍的感觉,当时她写道在她的日记中:"我站在里士满的街上,看着洋基队在国会大厦里抬起旗帜,眼泪流满了我的脸,因为我记得我喜欢那个国旗的时候,现在我讨厌它的视线!"正如南方人认为战前年份,分裂国家和战争本身的历史,他们开始写下自己的这些可怕事件的历史,并采取了所谓的"失落的原因"的想法,结束南方的愿望是管理自己和它的奴隶制的"特殊制度"。这个想法,或者是一些术语,它是失落原因的神话仍然存在。

Reconstruction, the process of rebuilding the South, would have been difficult under the best of circumstances and with the best of leadership. But Abraham Lincoln, whose attitude toward the South was encapsulated in his Second Inaugural Address "with charity for all and malice toward none" was dead. And Andrew Johnson, a Southerner, was far from the best man for the job. The Republican radicals in the United States Congress, who dominated the government, and whose good intentions may have been heartfelt, nevertheless dictated strict terms under which the South could rejoin the Union, terms that were virtually impossible for the South to swallow without choking on them. Reconstruction was, in the words of one historian, a "states' righter's nightmare."

Naturally the rage and frustration felt by many Southerners needed a target or outlet, and unsurprisingly, that target was the **Freedmen** and women, the former slaves who now walked unfettered in the streets of Charleston, Atlanta, Mobile and New Orleans. Their very presence as free men and women further aggravated feelings of Southerners like salt in a wound, and their wrath was often bloody and violent.

What is called the **Reconstruction** period lasted about a dozen years, but its effects went on for decades, and indeed the legacy of the Civil War and its aftermath, Reconstruction, remain with us to this day. The results of the Civil War included the 13th, 14th and 15th Amendments that ended slavery, created national citizenship for the first time, amplified the meaning of the Bill of Rights, and attempted to provide access to the democratic process for all adult male Americans. They were, at least for more than a generation only partially successful at best.

CONCLUSION

At Gettysburg Lincoln said, "that these here dead shall not have died in vain." But what did all those who perished in the Civil War die for? Did they die to end slavery, or preserve the Union? Was the war a terrible mistake in which millions of men died simply to defend a homeland, no matter what its faults? Was the war a holy crusade to make the world right?

What do you think? What did the war mean?

在重建南方的重建过程中，在最好的情况和最好的领导下，将是困难的。但是，他对南方的态度亚伯拉罕·林肯被封装在他的第二次就职演说中，"为所有人的慈善和无恶意的恶意"死亡。而安德鲁·约翰逊，一个南方人，远远不是最好的工作人。美国国会的共和党激进主义者，他们主宰政府，善意地表达了衷心的意见，但却规定了南方可以重新加入联盟的严格条款，南方几乎不可能吞并这些条款，而不会窒息他们。用一个历史学家的话来说，重建是一个"国家"的打击者的噩梦。

自然，许多南方人感到愤怒和沮丧需要一个目标或渠道，毫不奇怪，目标是自由人和妇女，前奴隶现在在查尔斯顿，亚特兰大，移动和新奥尔良的街道上不受约束。他们作为自由男人和女人的存在进一步加剧了南方人的感觉，如伤口中的盐，他们的愤怒常常是血腥和暴力的。

所谓的重建时期持续了大约十几年，但其影响已经持续了数十年，而且内战的遗产和重建仍然与我们保持一致。内战的结果包括结束奴隶制的第十三，第十四和第十五修正案，首次创造了国家公民身份，扩大了人权法案的意义，并试图为所有成年男性美国人提供民主进程。他们至少是一代以上，只有部分成功。

结论

在葛底斯堡林肯说，"这些死者不能徒劳地死亡"，但在内战中灭绝的所有人都死了？他们是否死于奴隶制，还是维护联盟呢？这场战争是一个可怕的错误，数百万人死亡只是为了捍卫家园，无论它有什么缺点？战争是一场圣战，使世界正确吗？

你怎么看？战争是什么意思？

PEOPLE

Copperhead Democrats: Sometimes called the Peace Democrats, they were Northerners who wanted to end the war and make a peace treaty that allowed the South to secede.

Freedmen: Former slaves

John Wilkes Booth: An actor from Virginia who assassinated President Lincoln in the vain hope that it might inspire the South to continue fighting.

Orator: A person who gives speeches.

Radical Republicans: Members of the Republican Party who were strong abolitionists.

Thaddeus Stevens: Leader of the Radical Republicans in the House of Representatives.

Tyrant: A terrible leader.

人

Copperhead 民主党人：有时候称为和平民主党人，他们是 Northerners 谁想要结束战争，并制定一个允许南方分离的和平条约。

自由人：前奴隶

约翰·威尔克斯展位：一名来自弗吉尼亚州的演员，暗杀林肯总统，希望这可能激励南方继续战斗。

演说者：演讲者。

激进的共和党人：共和党的成员是强大的废奴主义者。

Thaddeus Stevens：众议院激进共和党人的领导人。

暴君：一个可怕的领袖。

KEY IDEAS

Compensate: To pay for something that is lost or taken away.

Divine Providence: God

Ideology: Beliefs about what is important or true.

Lost Cause: I idea that the South was right to secede and should have maintained slavery and that the fight for Southern independence should go on.

Sic Semper Tyrannis: The motto of the State of Virginia. It is Latin for "Thus Always to Tyrants." John Wilkes Booth shouted it after assassinating President Lincoln.

Writ of Habeas Corpus: A legal term that means "Show me the Body." It means that the government cannot accuse you of a crime and then hold you in jail indefinitely before giving you a trial.

主要思想

赔偿：支付遗失或被带走的东西。

神的上帝：神

意识形态：关于什么是重要或真实的信仰。

失落的原因：我认为南方是正确的分手，应该保持奴隶制，南极独立的斗争应该继续下去。

Sic Semper Tyrannis：弗吉尼亚州的座右铭。 "因此永远暴虐"是拉丁语。约翰·威尔克斯·布斯在暗杀林肯总统后喊道。

人身保护令：人身保护令的法律术语是指"告诉我身体"，这意味着政府不能指责你犯罪，然后在审判之前无限期地将你关进监狱。

DOCUMENTS

Emancipation Proclamation: President Lincoln's official order freeing all slaves in the rebelling territories (but not in the Border States that had remained in the Union).

DOCUMENTS

解放宣言：林肯总统的正式命令释放了反叛分子领土上的所有奴隶（但不是留在联盟的边界国家）。

SPEECHES

Gettysburg Address: Lincoln's famous speech in 1863 in which he outlined the purpose of the war.

Lincoln's Second Inaugural Address: Lincoln's speech in 1865 in which he outlined his beliefs about the war and his view of Reconstruction.

重要讲话

葛底斯堡地址：林肯 1863 年的着名演讲，他概述了战争的目的。

林肯的第二次就职演说地址：林肯 1865 年的讲话，他概述了他对战争的看法和他对重建的看法。

LOCATIONS

Ford's Theater: The theater in Washington, DC where President Lincoln was assassinated.

地点

福特剧院：华盛顿特区的剧院，林肯总统被暗杀。

📅

EVENTS

Reconstruction: The period of time from the end of the Civil War in 1865 until 1877 when the victorious North tried to rebuild the South and deal with the problems the war created, including passing legislation related to former slaves.

活动

重建：1865 年至 1877 年内战期间，胜利北方试图重建南方，处理战争造成的问题，包括通过与前奴隶有关的立法的时期。

Listen to Sullivan Ballou's Letter

Read the Emancipation Proclamation

Read the Gettysburg Address

Read Lincoln's Second Inaugural Address

Watch a reenactment of Lincoln's Assassination

S I X T H   Q U E S T I O N

6 THE UNION WON THE WAR, BUT WHO WON THE PEACE?

WAS THE CIVIL WAR A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF SLAVERY?

INTRODUCTION

Reconstruction refers to the period following the Civil War of rebuilding the United States. It was a time of great pain and endless questions. On what terms would the Confederacy be allowed back into the Union? Who would establish the terms, Congress or the President? What was to be the place of freed blacks in the South? Did Abolition mean that black men would now enjoy the same status as white men? What was to be done with the Confederate leaders, who were seen as traitors by many in the North?

Although the military conflict had ended, Reconstruction was in many ways still a war. This important struggle was waged by radical northerners who wanted to punish the South and Southerners who desperately wanted to preserve their way of life. Perhaps most of all, Reconstruction was a struggle by formers slaves to define a new life as freedmen.

The North won the war. But in the decade after the war ended, these struggles involved a series of political choices, and countless actions taken by White Southerners, Northerners who travelled to the South, and former slaves. Would their efforts bring about a new, more inclusive and just culture in the South? Would freedom for slaves also mean equality? Or, would slavery end but the same social order go on, with a few wealthy White elites controlling the South, while millions of poor Whites and former slaves occupied the very bottom of the social order? After all the suffering of the war, what would be the final outcome?

What do you think? The North won the war, but who won the peace?

介绍

是指重建美国内战后的时期。这是一个非常痛苦和无休止的问题的时刻。联盟将允许什么条件回到联盟？谁会设立条款，国会或总统？什么是南方自由黑人的地方？废除是否意味着黑人现在与白人享有同等地位？与北部许多被视为叛徒的同盟领导人做了什么呢？

虽然军事冲突已经结束，但重建在许多方面仍然是一场战争。这个重要的斗争是激进的北方人，他们想惩罚那些迫切希望保护自己生活方式的南方和南方人。也许最重要的是，重建是一个斗争，由前者奴隶定义一个新的生活作为自由人。

北方赢了战争。但在战争结束的十年中，这些斗争涉及到一系列政治选择，以及白南方，北方北方和前奴隶所采取的无数行动。他们的努力能否在南方带来一个新的，更具包容性和公正的文化？奴隶的自由也意味着平等吗？否则奴隶制将结束，但同样的社会秩序继续下去，少数富有的白人精英控制着南方，而数百万的可怜的白人和前奴隶占据了社会秩序的最底层。在战争的痛苦之后，最后的结局是什么？

你怎么看？北方赢得了战争，但谁赢得了和平呢？

NORTHERN ATTITUDES TOWARD RECONSTRUCTION

The North was split on the question of reconstructing the South. Many Northerners favored a speedy reconstruction with a minimum of changes in the South. Other Northerners, many of them former abolitionists, had the rights of the freedmen and women in mind. That faction favored a more rigorous reconstruction process, which would include consideration of the rights of freed African-Americans.

In the North, with the exception of thousands of shattered families, many with wounded veterans back in their midst, there was little to reconstruct, since most of the fighting was done in the South. Northerners buried their dead, cared for the wounded and did their best to get on with their lives. Although it is safe to say that the majority of Northerners were happy to see slavery gone, if for no other reason than the fact that the divisiveness of the issue had poisoned the political scene for decades, it cannot be assumed that the attitudes of Northerners were friendly to the full incorporation of blacks into the national fabric. Most Northerners did not see Blacks as equals and were not excited about the prospect of millions of former slaves moving to the North. On the other hand, most Northerners did expect the South to accept the verdict of the war and to do whatever would be necessary to reconcile themselves to the end of that "peculiar institution" of slavery.

北方思想重建

北方在重建南方的问题上分裂。许多北方人赞成在南方进行最小的变化的迅速重建。其他北方人，其中许多是废除死刑的人，有自由和妇女的权利。这个派别赞成一个更加严格的重建进程，其中包括考虑被释放的非洲裔美国人的权利。

在北方，除了成千上万的破碎家庭，许多受伤的退伍军人回到了他们的中间，没有什么可重建的，因为大多数战斗是在南方完成的。北方人埋葬死者，照顾伤员，尽全力继续生活。尽管可以肯定地说，绝大多数北方人都很高兴看到奴隶制已经走了，但如果没有任何其他原因，就是这个问题的分裂已经使政治场景中毒了几十年，所以不能认为北方人的态度是友好地将黑人全面纳入国家面料。大多数北方人没有看到黑人平等，并且对数百万前奴隶迁往北方的前景并不感到兴奋。另一方面，大多数北方人都希望南方能够接受这场战争的判决，并且做任何必要的事情来调和奴隶制的这种"特殊制度"的结束。

Primary Source: Photograph
A photograph showing the devastation of the South. In this case, the destroyed railroad lines and burned out remains of a building after Sherman and his army passed through the area. This sort of devastation was common across the South.

主要来源：照片
一张显示南方破坏的照片。在这种情况下，在谢尔曼和他的军队通过该地区之后，被毁坏的铁路线路和烧毁了一座建筑物的遗体。这种破坏在南方是普遍的。

SOUTHERN ATTITUDES TOWARD RECONSTRUCTION

Many Southerners were enraged at the outcome of the war. Having suffered and bled and died to get out of the Union, they now found themselves back in it. A woman in Richmond wrote in her diary after the hated Yankees raised the American flag over the former Confederate capitol, "I once loved that flag, but now I hate the very sight of it!" Southerners recognized that they had to bow to the results of their loss, but did so with underlying resentment often bordering on hatred. Much ill feeling toward the North existed among the people who had stayed at home, especially in areas invaded by Sherman and others: wives, widows, orphans and those who had endured incredible hardships were particularly horrified to be back under federal control, ruled by their former enemies.

Many Southern whites, having convinced themselves in the prewar years that Blacks were incapable of running their own lives, were also unable to understand what freedom meant to Blacks. As one former slave expressed it, "Bottom rung on top now, Boss." Many whites were still convinced slavery had been right. In a migration reminiscent of the departure of loyalists after the Revolution, many southerners took their slaves and went to Brazil, where the institution still flourished. Others went west to get as far away from "those damn Yankees" as they could.

THE FREEDMEN AND WOMEN

Many **freedmen**, the name given to former slaves, who had been restricted all their lives had no "where" to go—although they were elated to be free: the great day of jubilation, it was called—but this new state of freedom also caused confusion. Some stayed on old plantations, others wandered off in search of lost family. Many slave owners were glad to get rid of "burdensome slaves" and threw them out "just like Yankee capitalists." Some former slaves, especially in cities like Charleston, celebrated their freedom in ways that whites considered "insolent." They put on fancy clothes, paraded through the streets and showed none of the deferential attitudes that had shown before the war toward their former masters.

While some Freedmen celebrated openly, others, less trusting, approached their new status with caution. As they quickly learned, there was more to being free than just not being owned as a slave. When asked how it felt to be free by a member of an investigating committee, one former slave said, "I don't know." When challenged to explain himself, he said, "I'll be free when I can do anything a white man can do." One does not have to be a historian to know that degree of freedom was a long time coming.

南方思想重建

许多南方人对战争的结果感到愤怒。他们遭受了流血，死亡，离开联盟，他们现在发现自己回来了。里士满的一个女人在她的日记中写道，在这个讨厌的洋基队把美国国旗提升到前联盟国会大厦之后，我曾经爱过那个国旗，但现在我很讨厌它！"南方人认识到他们不得不屈服于结果他们的损失，但是这样做是因为仇恨常常接踵而来的根深蒂固的怨恨。住在家里的人们，特别是在谢尔曼等人入侵的地区，对北方存在着很多不良的感觉：妻子，寡妇，孤儿和遭受难以置信的苦难的人特别震惊，受到联邦控制的控制，受到他们的控制前敌人。

许多南方白人已经相信黑社会无法自己生活的战前年代，也无法理解黑人的自由。正如一位前任奴隶所表示的那样，"现在底部的顶部，老板"。许多白人仍然相信奴隶制是对的。在一场迁徙中，人们回想起革命后保皇派的离开，许多南方人把奴隶带到了巴西，在这个机构仍然蓬勃发展。其他人去西方，尽可能远离"那些死亡的扬基队"。

自由和妇女

许多自由人，给予前奴隶的名字，一直受到限制，他们没有"在哪里"去，尽管他们很高兴自由：欢乐的伟大的一天，被称为－但这个新的自由国也是造成混乱。有些人呆在旧的种植园，其他的人在寻找失落的家庭中漫步。许多奴隶主很高兴摆脱"繁重的奴隶"，把他们抛出去，就像扬基资本家一样。"一些前奴隶，特别是在查尔斯顿市，特别是在城市，如查尔斯顿，以白人认为"无礼"的方式庆祝自由。他们穿上漂亮的衣服，穿过街道游行，没有显示在战前向他们的前主人提出的任何一种敬意的态度。

虽然一些自由人公开庆祝，但其他人则不信任，谨慎地接近新的地位。他们很快就知道，有更多的自由而不仅仅是作为一个奴隶拥有。当被问及调查委员会成员如何感到自由时，一名前奴隶说："我不知道。"当有挑战自我解释的时候，他说："我可以做任何一件白人能做的事情，我会自由的。"一个

人不必是历史学家，知道自由度是很长的一段时间。

For African Americans, the most important single result of War was freedom—"the great watershed of their lives." Pertinent phrases include: "I feel like a bird out of a cage... Amen... Amen... Amen!" Freedom came "like a blaze of glory." "Freedom burned in the heart long before freedom was born." The search for lost families was "awe inspiring." Some whites claimed that Blacks did not understand freedom and were to be "pitied." But Blacks had observed a free society, and they knew it meant an end to injustices against slaves. Blacks in the South also had a workable society of their own including churches, families and in time schools as well. A Black culture already existed, and could be adapted to new conditions of freedom. Blacks also took quickly to politics. As one author has put it, they watched the way their former masters voted and then did the opposite. Remarkably, Southern Blacks exhibited little overt resentment against their former masters, and many adopted a conciliatory attitude. When they got into the legislatures they did not push hard for reform.

对于非洲裔美国人来说，战争中最重要的单一结果是自由 - "他们生活中最大的流域"。相关短语包括："我觉得像笼子里的一只鸟...阿门...阿们...阿们！"自由就像一场荣耀之火。""自由之前很久以前，自由就被烧了"。寻找失落的家庭是"令人鼓舞的"。有些白人声称黑人不明白自由，而是被"迷惑"。但黑人观察到一个自由的社会，他们知道这意味着结束对奴隶的不公正。南方的黑人也有一个自己的可行的社会，包括教会，家庭和时间学校。黑人文化已经存在，可以适应新的自由条件。黑社会也迅速采取政治行动。正如一位作者所说，他们看着他们以前的大师投票的方式，然后做了相反的事情。值得注意的是，南黑人对他们以前的主人表现出不太明显的反感，许多人采取和解的态度。当他们进入立法机关时，他们没有为改革而努力。

Much of the South was physically devastated and demoralized after the war. Railroads and factories had been destroyed, farms had gone unattended, and livestock had been killed or driven off in areas occupied by the Union armies. The former plantation owners still had their land but had lost much if not all of their capital. The former slaves comprised a large and experienced labor force but owned neither land nor capital. Many former slaves believed General Sherman' promise that the federal government was going to supply them with "**forty acres and a mule**." Sherman, however, had exceeded his authority, and the Constitution inhibited the ability of the government to confiscate private property "without due process of law."

南方大部分地区在战后遭到身体破坏和挫败。铁路和工厂遭到破坏，农场无人照顾，牲畜在联盟军队占领的地区遇害或被赶走。以前的种植园业主仍然拥有自己的土地，但是如果不是所有的资本都损失了很多。前奴隶包括一个大而有经验的劳动力，但既不拥有土地也不拥有资本。许多以前的奴隶相信谢尔曼将军承诺联邦政府将向他们提供"四十英亩和一只骡子"。但是，谢尔曼已经超出了他的权力，"宪法"禁止政府没收私有财产的能力"正当法律程序"。

Some sort of system of production had to be worked out, and what evolved was a combination of various plans that on the surface seemed reasonable: sharecropping, tenant farming and the crop lien system. **Sharecropping** meant that those working the land would share the profits from their crop sales with landowners and **tenant farmers** simply rented the land. Both systems had as their basis a bargain between laborers and the land owners. Each system was potentially beneficial to both parties, but each also contained the possibility of exploitation and fraud, as was shown in practice. Even poor whites became sharecroppers or tenant farmers, so there was nothing inherently discriminatory in any approach. In fact, by 1880 a significant portion of the former slaves had become landowners, and despite exploitation and abuses, the system

必须制定某种生产制度，哪些演变是各种计划的结合，表面上似乎是合理的：共享作业，租户耕作和作物留置权制度。共享手段意味着那些在土地上工作的土地将与土地所有者和租户农民分享利润来简单地租用土地。两个制度都是劳动者和土地所有者之间的谈判基础。每个制度对双方都有潜在的好处，但每一个制度也都包含了剥削和欺诈的可能性。即使是可怜的白人也成为了农民和农民，所以在任何方面都没有内在的歧视。事实上，到 1880 年，前奴隶的很大一部分已经成为土地所有者，尽管遭到剥削和虐待，该制度给有关各方带来了适度的合作自力更生。然而，许多前奴隶仍然发现自己

brought a moderate amount of cooperative self-reliance to the parties involved. Nevertheless, many former slaves still found themselves caught in a system that offered few rewards beyond mere subsistence.

PRESIDENTIAL RECONSTRUCTION

All of these concerns, and the economic devastation of the South were issues that politicians in Washington, DC had to grapple with. In 1864, Republican Abraham Lincoln had chosen **Andrew Johnson**, a Democratic senator from Tennessee, as his Vice Presidential candidate. Lincoln was looking for Southern support and hoped that by selecting Johnson he would appeal to Southerners who never wanted to leave the Union. Johnson was different from the slave owning elites of the South who had led the Confederacy into secession and war. Johnson, like Lincoln, had grown up in poverty and never owned slaves. He did not learn to write until he was 20 years old. He came to political power as a backer of the small farmer. In speeches, he railed against "slaveocracy" and a bloated "Southern aristocracy" that had little use for the white working man.

The views of the Vice President rarely matter too much, unless something happens to the President. Following Lincoln's assassination, Johnson's views now mattered a great deal. Would he follow Lincoln's moderate approach to reconciliation? Would he support limited black suffrage as Lincoln did? Would he follow the Radical Republicans and be harsh and punitive toward the South?

For the first few years after the war ended, Reconstruction followed was led by Johnson. Historians have called this period **Presidential Reconstruction**. Johnson believed the Southern states should decide the course that was best for them. He also felt that African-Americans were unable to manage their own lives. He certainly did not think that African-Americans deserved to vote. At one point in 1866 he told a group of blacks visiting the White House that they should immigrate to another country.

He also gave **amnesty** and **pardon**. He returned all property, except, of course, their slaves, to former Confederates who pledged loyalty to the Union and agreed to support the Thirteenth Amendment. Confederate officials and owners of large taxable estates were required to apply individually for a Presidential pardon. Many former Confederate leaders were soon returned to power. Johnson's vision of Reconstruction had proved remarkably lenient. Very few Confederate leaders were persecuted. By 1866, 7,000 Presidential pardons had been granted.

陷入了一个不仅仅是维持生计的几乎没有奖励的制度。

总统重建

所有这些关切，以及南方的经济破坏是华盛顿特区政治家不得不面对的问题。 1864 年，共和党亚伯拉罕·林肯选择了田纳西州民主党参议员安德鲁·约翰逊担任副总统候选人。林肯正在寻找南方的支持，并希望通过选择约翰逊，他会呼吁不想离开联盟的南方人。约翰逊与领导联邦分裂国家和战争的南方奴隶的精英不同。约翰逊，像林肯一样，在贫穷中长大，从未拥有奴隶。直到二十岁才开始写作。他作为小农的支持者来到政治大国。在演讲中，他反对"奴隶主主义"和一个 blo 肿的"南方贵族"，对于白人工作者来说几乎没有用处。

除非总统发生什么事情，否则副总统的意见很少呢。在林肯的暗杀之后，约翰逊的观点很重要。他会遵循林肯温和的和解方式吗？他会支持林肯有限的黑人选举权吗？他会跟随激进的共和党人，对南方是苛刻和惩罚的吗？

战争结束后的头几年，重建由约翰逊领衔。历史学家称这个时期是总统重建。约翰逊相信南方各国应该决定最适合他们的路线。他也觉得非裔美国人无法管理自己的生活。他当然不认为非裔美国人值得投票。在 1866 年的某个时刻，他告诉一群黑人访问白宫，他们应该移民到另一个国家。

他也大赦赦免。他把所有财产当然归还给他们的奴隶，前往同盟的盟友，并同意支持"第十三修正案"。联邦官员和大型应税屋的业主必须单独申请总统赦免。许多前联盟领导人很快就恢复了执政。约翰逊对重建的看法证明是非常宽松的。很少有联邦领导人受到迫害。到 1866 年，总统的赦免已经达到 7000。

RADICAL RECONSTRUCTION

While President Johnson sought a gentile, and forgiving Reconstruction, there were Republicans in Congress who were horrified at his approach. These men, dubbed the **Radical Republicans** believed blacks were entitled to the same political rights and opportunities as whites. They also believed that the Confederate leaders should be punished for their roles in the Civil War. Leaders like Pennsylvania Representative **Thaddeus Stevens** and Massachusetts Senator **Charles Sumner** vigorously opposed Andrew Johnson's lenient policies and great political battle ensued.

Americans had long been suspicious of the federal government playing too large a role in the affairs of states. But the Radicals felt that extraordinary times called for direct intervention in state affairs and laws designed to protect the emancipated blacks. At the heart of their beliefs was the notion that blacks must be given a chance to compete in a free-labor economy. In 1866, this activist Congress also introduced a bill to extend the life of the **Freedmen's Bureau** and began work on a **Civil Rights Bill**.

President Johnson stood in opposition. He vetoed the Freedmen's Bureau Bill, claiming that it would bloat the size of government. He vetoed the Civil Rights Bill rejecting that blacks have the "same rights of property and person" as whites.

The Radical Republicans in Congress grew impatient with President Johnson and began overriding his vetoes. As they grew in political

雷达重建

虽然约翰逊总统寻求外邦人，并宽恕重建，国会的共和党人也对他的态度感到恐惧。这些被称为激进共和党人的人认为黑人有权享有与白人相同的政治权利和机会。他们还认为，联邦领导人应该在内战中受到惩罚。诸如宾夕法尼亚州代表 Thaddeus 史蒂文生和马萨诸塞州参议员查尔斯·萨姆纳等领导人大力反对安德鲁·约翰逊的宽大政策，并在此间进行了巨大的政治斗争。

美国人长期以来一直怀疑联邦政府在国家事务中扮演太大的角色。但是，Radicals 认为，非凡的时代要求直接干涉国家事务和旨在保护解放黑人的法律。他们信仰的核心是黑人必须有机会在自由劳动力经济中竞争的概念。 1866 年，这个活动家大会还提出了一项延长自由民主主义人民共和国人民生活的法案，并开始制定"民权法案"。

Primary Source: Illustration

An illustration of "The Misses Cooke's school room," one of many schools operated the South by the Freedman's Bureau. This illustration appeared in Frank Leslie's illustrated newspaper, 1866.

主要来源：插图

"库克小姐的学校房间"的例子，是许多学校之一，由弗里德曼办公室管理南部。这张插图出现在弗兰克·莱斯利（Frank Leslie）1866 年的插图报纸上.

约翰逊总统反对。他否决了自由民主党的"条例草案"，声称这会使政府的规模膨胀。他否决了"民权法案"，拒绝黑人与白人具有"相同的财产和人身权利"。

国会中的激进共和党人对约翰逊总统不耐烦，开始压倒他的否决权。随着政治权力的增长，他们接管

power, they took over the role of leading Reconstruction. This later period has come to be known as Congressional, or **Radical Reconstruction**.

IMPEACHMENT

Impeachment refers to the process specified in the Constitution for trial and removal from office of any federal official accused of misconduct. It has two stages. The House of Representatives charges the official with articles of impeachment. "Treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors" are defined by the Constitution as impeachable offenses. Once charged by the House, the case goes before the Senate for a trial.

In the spring of 1868, Andrew Johnson became the first President to be impeached. The heavily Republican House of Representatives brought 11 articles of impeachment against Johnson. Many insiders knew that the Congress was looking for any excuse to rid themselves of an uncooperative President.

The case against Johnson involved appointed officials and the president's authority to fire officials who had been approved by the Senate. The affair was clearly a fight for power between Congress and the President, and when Johnson asked for the resignation of Radical Republicans in his Cabinet, it gave his opponents in Congress an excuse to impeach him. Johnson's defense was simple: only a clear violation of the law warranted his removal. But as with politics, things are rarely simple. One problem was that since Johnson had become president when Lincoln was assassinated, there was no new Vice President to take over.

Eventually, in May of 1868, 35 Senators voted to convict, one vote short of the required 2/3 majority. Seven Republican Senators jumped party lines and found Johnson not guilty. Johnson dodged a bullet and was able to serve out his term. It would be 130 years before another President — Bill Clinton — would be impeached.

THREE AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION

Of all of the laws passed during Reconstruction, and all of the political fighting between Congress, the President, and Whites in the South, by far the most important and longest lasting effect was the passage of three amendments to the Constitution.

When President Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation on January 1, 1863, he was concerned that the measure might be unconstitutional. Congressional Republicans shared the president's

了重建领域的作用。这个后期已经被称为国会或激进重建。

弹劾

弹 ment 指"宪法"规定的任何被指控不当行为的联邦官员被审判和解职的程序。它有两个阶段。众议院对这名官员给予弹 with 条款。宪法将"叛国罪，贿赂或其他高度罪行和轻罪"定义为不可逾越的罪行。一旦被众议院指控，案件在参议院审判之前。

1868 年春天，安德鲁·约翰逊成为第一位被弹 first 的总统。共和党众议院大批人对约翰逊提出了 11 条弹 11 条款。许多内部人士知道，国会正在寻找任何借口摆脱一个不合作的总统。

反对约翰逊的案件涉及指定的官员和总统的权力，以消除参议院批准的官员。这件事情显然是国会与总统之间的权力斗争，当约翰逊要求在内阁中辞呈激进的共和党人时，它向国会的对手提出了弹 ach 他的借口。约翰逊的防守很简单：只有明确的违法行为才有可能被取消。但与政治一样，事情很简单。一个问题是，由于约翰逊在林肯被暗杀时成为总统，没有新任副总统接手。

最终，1868 年 5 月，35 名参议员投票定罪，一票缺少所需的 2/3 多数票。共和党七名参议员跳起党派，发现约翰逊不认罪。约翰逊躲过了一颗子弹，并能够出任他的任期。另一位总统比尔·克林顿（Bill Clinton）将被剥夺 130 年。

三项修正案

在重建过程中通过的所有法律，以及国会，总统和南方白人之间的所有政治斗争，迄今为止最重要和最持久的影响是通过了宪法的三项修正案。

林肯总统 1863 年 1 月 1 日发布"解放宣言"时，担心这一措施可能违宪。国会共和党人分享了总统的关切，因为宣布是一项战争措施，战争结束后可能无

concerns, in that the proclamation was a war measure and might be invalid once the war was over. At Lincoln's urging, Congress passed the **Thirteenth Amendment** in 1864. It read, "Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction." Lincoln made passage and ratification of the amendment to abolish slavery a campaign issue in the election of 1864 and it was ratified by the requisite number of states in December, 1865.

In March 1865, Congress passed the Trumbull Civil Rights Act, which was designed to counter the Supreme Court decision in the Dred Scott case by granting blacks citizenship. The act affirmed the right of freedmen to make contracts, sue, give evidence and to buy, lease and convey personal and real property. The act excluded state statutes on segregation, but did not provide for public accommodations for blacks. Johnson again vetoed the bill on constitutional grounds and also on the grounds that Southern Congressmen had been absent. Again, he was overridden. Johnson's vetoes infuriated the Radical Republicans in congress. In June they passed the **Fourteenth Amendment** because they feared that the Trumbull Civil Rights Act might be declared unconstitutional. The Amendment states, "All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the state wherein they reside. No state shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any state deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws."

Ratification of the Fourteenth Amendment was eventually made a condition for states to be readmitted to the Union. The radicals continued to uphold their exclusion of Southern Congressmen on grounds that by excluding blacks from the political process. Every Southern state legislature except that of Tennessee refused to ratify the Fourteenth Amendment. Instead, they persisted in applying Black Codes to the freedmen and denying them voting and other rights.

In 1869 Congress passed the **Fifteenth Amendment** to the Constitution, which stated that, "The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude." The amendment was finally ratified in 1870, and well over half a million black names were added to the voter rolls during the 1870s.

效。在林肯的敦促下，国会在 1864 年通过了第十三修正案。它读到："奴隶制和非自愿的奴役，除了对该方已被定罪的罪行作为惩罚外，不得存在于美国境内，管辖权。"林肯在 1864 年的选举中通过并批准了废除奴隶制的修正案，并在 1865 年 12 月获得了必要数量的州批准。

1865 年 3 月，国会通过了"特鲁布尔民权法案"，该法案旨在通过给予黑人公民身份抵制最高法院对 Dred Scott 案的裁决。该法案确认了自由人有权作出合同，起诉，提供证据，购买，租赁和转让个人和不动产。该行为排除了关于隔离的国家法规，但没有规定黑人的公共住宿。约翰逊再次以宪法理由否决了该法案，也是因为南方议员不在场。他再次被覆盖了。约翰逊的否决激怒了激进的共和党人在大会上。 6 月，他们通过了第十四修正案，因为他们担心"特鲁布尔民权法案"可能被宣布违宪。 "修正案"指出，"在美国出生或归化，并受其管辖的所有人均为美国公民及居住国家，任何国家不得制定或执行任何法律，美国公民的豁免权，任何国家在没有正当法律程序的情况下，也不得剥夺任何人的生命，自由或财产，也不得对其管辖范围内的任何人同样保护法律。

第十四修正案的批准最终成为国家重新加入联盟的条件。激进分子继续坚持排除南方国会议员，理由是将黑人从政治进程中排除。除了田纳西州以外的每个南方州立法委员都拒绝批准"第十四修正案"。相反，他们坚持对自由人应用黑色代码，否认他们投票和其他权利。

1869 年，国会通过了"宪法"第十五修正案，其中指出，"美国公民的投票权不得因美国或任何国家因种族，肤色或先前条件而被剥夺或删除的奴役"。修正案于 1870 年终于获得批准，在十七世纪七十年代，这些选民名单中增加了五十多万个黑名单。

Although the Fifteenth Amendment was meant to ensure voting rights for all males, over time, devices such as **poll taxes** and **literacy tests** were implemented by White southern leaders to subvert the purpose of the amendment. Poll taxes had to be paid two years in advance, and the financial burden was stiff for blacks. (Poor whites could procure election "loans" to enable them to vote.) Literacy tests were used to restrict blacks, and alternatives such a passing a test on the Constitution were often rigged in favor of whites. By the turn of the century, as a result of such things as amended state constitutions, **grandfather clauses** and gerrymandering, black voting in the South had been reduced to a fraction of its former numbers. By 1910 few blacks could vote in parts of the South; thus, a vast contrast existed between the earlier goals of the abolitionists and the reality of everyday life for freedmen in the South. This condition persisted until the Civil Rights Movement of the 1950s and 1960s.

VIOLENT OPPOSITION TO RECONSTRUCTION

The changes brought about the Reconstruction, whether led by President Johnson or by the Radical Republicans in Congress, were not met with jubilation by Whites in the South.

In the months following the end of the Civil War many whites carried out acts of random violence against blacks. In their frustration at having lost the war and suffered great loss of life and property, they made the former slaves scapegoats for what they had endured. The violence became more focused when the **Ku Klux Klan** was founded in December, 1865. The Klan and other white supremacy groups, such as the Knights of the White Camellia, the Red Shirts and the White League, were well underway by 1867. The target of the Klan was the Republican Party, both blacks and whites, as well as anyone who overtly assisted blacks in their quest for greater freedom and economic independence.

The result was what can only be called a reign of terror conducted by the Klan and other groups over the following decades. Thousands were killed, injured or driven from their homes or suffered property damage as buildings were burned and farm animals destroyed. Blacks who tried to further the cause of the Republican Party were singled out for attack, as were whites who, for example, rented rooms to northern **carpetbaggers**, including school teachers. Black men were beaten or lynched in front of horrified family members. The fear of night riders often drove blacks into the woods to sleep because they felt they were not safe in their own homes.

Former Confederate general Nathan Bedford Forrest, reported to be the first Grand Wizard of the Klan, formally disbanded the KKK in

虽然"第十五修正案"旨在确保所有男性的投票权，随着时间的推移，白方南方领导人实施民意调查和扫盲检查等手段颠覆了修正案的目的。投标税必须提前两年支付，黑社会的经济负担也是僵硬的。（可怜的白人可以采取选举"贷款"，使他们能够投票。）扫盲测试被用来限制黑人，而经常对"宪法"进行考验的替代品经常被用来支持白人。到本世纪初，由于国家宪法，祖父条款和 gerrymandering 的修改，南方的黑人投票已经减少到原来的一小部分。到 1910 年，很少黑人可以在南部的部分地区投票;因此，废除奴隶主的早期目标与南方的自由人日常生活的现实存在巨大的对比。这种情况一直持续到 1950 年代和 1960 年代的民权运动。

违反重建的对策

重建所带来的变化，无论是由约翰逊总统或国会的激进共和党领导，都没有被南方的白人欢乐。

在内战结束后的几个月中，许多白人对黑人进行随机暴力行为。在失去战争，遭受重大生命财产损失的挫败中，他们使前奴隶成为他们所忍受的替罪羊。当 Ku Klux Klan 于 1865 年 12 月成立时，暴力变得更加集中。1867 年，Klan 和其他白色优势团体，如白山茶，红衫军和白联，正在顺利进行。目标是共和党，黑人和白人，以及任何一方黑社会协助黑社会寻求更大的自由和经济独立的人。

结果是在接下来的几十年里，只有这样才能被 Klan 和其他团体所称的恐怖统治。成千上万的家庭遇害，受伤或驾驶，遭受财产损失，建筑物被烧毁，农场动物被毁坏。试图进一步推动共和党事业的黑人被挑选出来，就像白人一样，比如说，他们把房间租给了北方的地毯包包，包括学校老师。黑人在恐吓的家庭成员面前遭殴打或。病。夜间骑手的恐惧经常将黑人带入树林睡觉，因为他们觉得自己的家里不安全。

据报道，前联邦总统内斯特·贝德福德·福雷斯特（Nathan Bedford Forrest）成为了第一位耆那教

1868 because of increasing violence. Nevertheless, the group continued to exist and to wreak vengeance upon freedmen and their white supporters. Eventually the Congress passed the **Lodge Force Bills** in 1870 and 1871 to control the violence and protect blacks from being deprived of their civil and political, but enforcement of those acts was often lax, and other means of intimidation often proved effective.

Despite efforts to control the violence, **lynching** in the South remained common throughout the 19th and into the 20th century. They were performed in public to further intimidate blacks, who realized that they remained vulnerable, and that the perpetrators would not be punished by a judicial system controlled by Whites, even though it was obvious who the guilty parties were. Almost any action deemed unacceptable by whites could lead to a lynching, including looking too closely at a white woman, talking disrespectfully to whites or simply being in the wrong place at the wrong time.
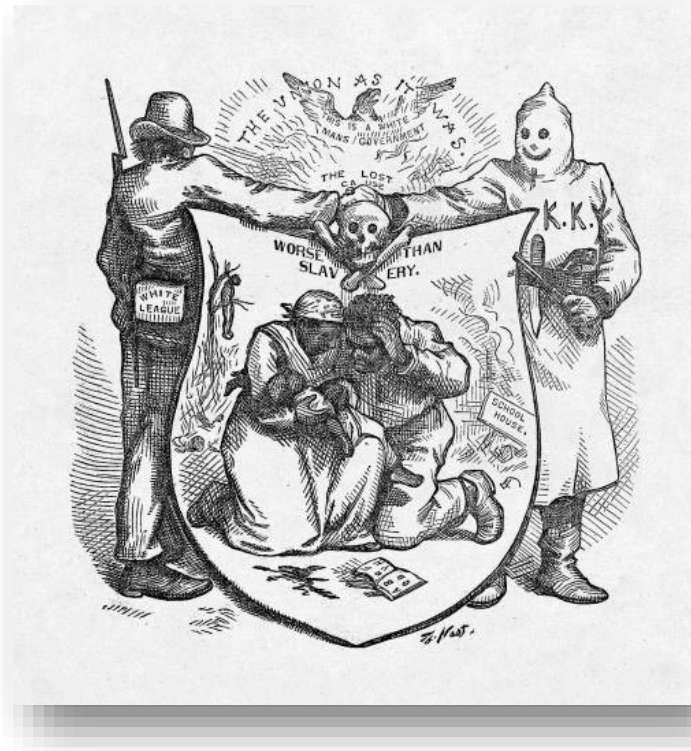
大师，因为暴力越来越多，于 1868 年正式解散了 KKK。然而，该集团继续存在，并对自由人及其白人支持者进行复仇。国会最终在 1870 年和 1871 年通过了洛克力量法案，以控制暴力，保护黑人不被剥夺公民和政治权利，但执行这些行为往往是松懈的，而其他的恐吓手段也常常被证明是有效的。

尽管努力控制暴力，但在南部仍然普遍存在于 19 世纪和 20 世纪。他们公开表演，进一步恐吓黑人，他们意识到他们仍然是脆弱的，肇事者不会受到白人控制的司法制度的惩罚，即使显然是有罪的人是谁。几乎任何被白人认为是不能接受的行为都可能导致一场小偷，包括过分关注白人女子，不礼貌地对白人说话，或者在错误的时间只是在错误的地方说话。

Primary Source: Editorial Cartoon
An illustration from Harper's Weekly in 1874. The "supporters" are a member of the White League and a hooded Ku Klux Klansman, shaking hands on the "Lost Cause".

主要来源：编辑卡通
"支持者"是白联盟的一名成员，还有一名戴帽的库克斯·克兰斯曼（Ku Klux Klansman），在"失物招领"上握手。

THE COMPROMISE OF 1877

By 1876 many people both North and South had grown tired of reconstruction and wanted to forget the Civil War altogether. It had become apparent that the problems of the South could not be resolved by tough federal legislation, no matter how well intended. The country had undergone a long-lasting financial recession beginning in 1873; the Indian Wars were in full swing in the West; the first transcontinental railroad had been completed in 1869, but labor discontent was rising; and immigrants were pouring into the country at an ever-increasing rate. Thus the problems of the South had become something of a distraction. Social equality for Blacks was nonexistent and Congress was losing focus on the issue.

In May 1872, Congress passed a general **Amnesty Act**, which restored political rights to most remaining confederates. The Democratic Party was restored to control in many Southern states, and black voting rights began to be curtailed.

The election of 1876 was the vehicle by which Reconstruction was finally ended. The candidates were former Union General **Rutherford B. Hayes** of Ohio, Republican, and New York Democratic Governor **Samuel Tilden**. The campaign was filled with corruption. White supremacy groups helped spread pro-Democratic propaganda throughout the South. As the campaign drew to a close, Tilden was regarded as the favorite, and on the final night of voting, even Hayes believed that he had lost as he retired for the night. It soon became apparent, however, that the results were unclear.

To this day it is not certain who really won. When the electoral votes had been counted, the election returns in three Southern states - South Carolina, Florida and Louisiana - were in question. Charges arose that the election had been stolen in those three states. The apparent results gave those three states to Hayes, which meant that he would have won in the Electoral College by one vote; but if any of those results were overturned, Tilden would have become the victor. The question was: how could the conflict be resolved?

Congress formed a committee to decide what to do. Originally there were supposed to be seven republicans, seven democrats and one independent on the committee, but the independent was deemed ineligible and was replaced by a republican. When the returns in the three states in question were examined, the committee decided to accept the results as presented to Congress, in each case by a vote of 8 to 7. Thus all three states were given over to Hayes.

1877 年的折中

到 1876 年，许多北方和南方人都厌倦了重建，想要完全忘记内战。很明显，南方的问题无法通过强硬的联邦立法来解决，无论预期如何。该国从 1873 年开始经历了长期的金融衰退;印度战争在西方全面展开，第一条横贯大陆的铁路已于 1869 年完工，但劳工不满也在上升。移民涌入该国的速度越来越快。因此，南方的问题已经成为一种分心。黑社会平等不存在，国会失去了对这个问题的关注。

1872 年 5 月，国会通过了一项"大赦法"，恢复了大多数剩下的联盟的政治权利。民主党在许多南方国家恢复了控制，黑人投票权开始被削减。

1876 年的选举是重建终于结束的车辆。候选人是前俄罗斯共和党联邦总理卢瑟福·海耶斯和纽约民主党总督塞缪尔·蒂尔登。这次运动充满腐败。白人至上主义团体在整个南方传播了民主宣传。随着活动结束，Tilden 被认为是最喜欢的，而在投票的最后一夜，甚至海耶斯认为他在晚上退休时已经输了。然而，很明显，结果不清楚。

到目前为止，不确定谁赢了。当选民选票被选中时，三个南方州 - 南卡罗来纳州，佛罗里达州和路易斯安那州的选举返回是有问题的。这些选举在这三个州被偷走了。明显的结果给了这三个国家给海斯，这意味着他将以一票的方式赢得选举团;但如果任何结果被推翻，Tilden 将成为胜利者。问题是：冲突如何解决？

国会组成了一个委员会来决定如何做。本来应该有七个共和党人，七个民主党人和一个独立的委员会，但独立被认为不合格，并被共和党人所取代。当三个国家的回报被审查时，委员会决定接受提交给国会的结果，在每一种情况下都以 8 票对 7 票。因此，所有这三个州都被交给海耶斯。

Democrats in Congress threatened to refuse to accept the committee's recommendations which would have thrown the nation into turmoil, with no new president to take office. Behind closed doors, in smoke-filled rooms, the **Compromise of 1877** was hatched. In return for allowing Hayes to take office as president, the Democrats exacted three promises. First, Reconstruction would be ended and all federal troops would be removed from the South. Second, the South would get a cabinet position in Hayes's government. Third, money for internal improvements would be provided by the federal government for use in the South.

国会民主党人威胁拒绝接受委员会的建议，这将使国家陷入混乱，没有新总统上任。在封闭的门后，在充满烟雾的房间中，1877 年的妥协被孵出。作为回报允许海耶斯担任总统的职务，民主党人作出了三项承诺。首先，重建将会结束，所有联邦部队都将从南部撤出。第二，南方将在海耶斯政府内阁职位。第三，内部改善的资金将由联邦政府在南方提供。

The irony is that President Hayes probably already planned to do those things, but the Compromise of 1877 was accepted. In April of that year federal troops marched out of the South, turning the freedmen over, as Frederick Douglass put it, to the "rage of our infuriated former masters."

讽刺的是，海耶斯总统可能已经计划做这些事情，但 1877 年的妥协被接受了。当年四月，联邦军队从南方出发，将弗里德里克·道格拉斯所说的自由人转向"愤怒的前大师们"的愤怒。

THE REDEEMERS

赎回者

Historian Page Smith writes that the Compromise of 1877 which ended Reconstruction "was also a death sentence for the hopes of southern blacks." Feeling that the North under the radical Republicans in Congress had sought to impose "black rule" on the South. White Southerners set about restoring white supremacy. Their assault on Black rights proceeded on both political and economic ground. Once federal troops left the South, all the advances that had been made for black people during the reconstruction period slowly began to unravel. The Southern governments that took over were dominated by conservative Democrats known as "**Redeemers**." Their purpose was to disenfranchise Republicans, black or white, and restore what they viewed as the proper order of things, namely, a society based on white supremacy. The Republican Party soon ceased to exist as a viable political force in the former Confederate states, and Democrats ruled the South for over one hundred years.

历史学家史密斯写道，结束重建的 1877 年妥协"也是对南黑人希望的死刑判决。"感觉到国会激进共和党下的北方试图在南方强加"黑社会"。白色的南方人关于恢复白色至上。他们对黑人权利的袭击在政治和经济的基础上进行。一旦联邦部队离开南方，在重建期间为黑人所做的一切进展慢慢开始解散。接管的南方政府由保守的民主党人称为"救世主"，他们的目的是剥夺共和党人黑人或白人，恢复他们认为的物质秩序，即基于白人至上的社会。共和党在前同盟国即将不复存在，成为一个可行的政治力量，而民主党统治了南方一百多年。

All across the South, Blacks who attempted to exercise their electoral franchise were harassed, intimidated, and even killed to prevent them from voting. Resolutions were passed by groups of white citizens, and editorials appeared in newspapers claiming that Blacks should be excluded from voting because of their political incompetence. Some southern leaders took pride in their attempts to prevent Blacks from voting. One South Carolina leader even bragged of having shot blacks for attempting to vote. Black leaders courageous enough to fight the tide of discrimination were unable even through eloquent pleas for fairness to effect a change in the growing attitude of political discrimination.

在南部各地，试图行使选举权的黑人都被骚扰，恐吓，甚至杀死，以防止他们投票。决议由白人群体通过，社论在报纸上出现，声称黑人因为政治无能而被排除在投票之外。一些南方领导人为防止黑人投票而企图自豪。一名南卡罗来纳的领导人甚至吹嘘要黑人投票。勇于斗争的黑人领导人，甚至无法通过公正的要求来改变政治歧视日益增长的态度。

As for social equality, during the last quarter of the 19th century, the Southern states passed many "**Jim Crow**" laws that resulted in segregated public schools and limited black access to public facilities, such as parks, restaurants and hotels. Segregation in the South soon spread to virtually all public entities. As a Richmond Times editorial stated, "God Almighty drew the color line and it cannot be obliterated. The Negro must stay on his side of the line, and the white man on his." Although African Americans struggled against that imposition of that line for generations, it was not until the great Civil Rights Movement of the 1950s and 1960s - 100 years after the Civil War - that meaningful progress was made to ensure that Blacks really enjoyed the promises of Reconstruction.

至于社会平等，在十九世纪最后一个季度，南方国家通过了许多"吉姆·乌鸦"的法律，导致了公立学校的分离，黑公共场所的公共设施，如公园，饭店和酒店。南方的隔离很快就蔓延到几乎所有的公共机构。正如"里士满时报"的一篇社论所说，"全能的上帝绘制了色彩线，不能抹去。黑人必须留在他身边，白人在他身上。"虽然非裔美国人反对强加这一代人的努力，直到 20 世纪 50 年代和 60 年代的伟大的民权运动－100 年后内战－取得了有意义的进展，以确保黑人真正享受重建的承诺。

Secondary Source: Statue

The Robert E. Lee Monument in Richmond, Virginia. Completed in 1890, the monument was created by French sculptor Antonin Mercié. Across the South, the many monuments to Confederates like this one serve as a reminder to everyone, especially African Americans, that the "Lost Cause" is still a potent idea.

次要资料来源：雕像

弗吉尼亚州里士满的罗伯特·李纪念碑。纪念碑于 1890 年建成，由法国雕塑家安东宁·梅西（AntoninMercié）创作。在南方，像这样的联邦的许多纪念碑，都是提醒每一个人，特别是非洲裔美国人，"失落的原因"仍然是一个有力的想法。

CONCLUSION

Reconstruction came to a close in 1877 and the nation as a whole tried to move on from the long agony of the Civil War. A great deal had changed, but many things had not. In the South a system of segregation enforced by Jim Crow laws replaced slavery. Three amendments to the Constitution had been added, but the promises they made to former slaves were not a reality for many. Women

结论

1877 年的重建即将结束，整个国家从内战的漫长痛苦中恢复过来。很多事情发生了变化，但很多事情没有改变。在南方，吉姆·克罗法律执行的隔离制度取代了奴隶制。增加了"宪法"修正案，但对前奴隶的承诺并不是许多人的现实。妇女特别感到失望的是，"第十五修正案"只给了所有种族的男子投票权。

especially were disappointed that the Fifteenth Amendment gave voting rights only men of all races.

After so much bloodshed, before, during, and after the Civil War, we would like to be able to assign winners and losers. Battlefield victors are easy to name. After all, Lee surrendered to Grant at Appomattox. But winning battles and achieving long-term goals are different things entirely. The North defeated the Confederate armies, but did they get what they really wanted? The South lost on the battlefield, but did their worldview win out in the long run?

What do you think? The North won the war, but who won the peace?

经过这么多的流血事件，在内战之前，之中和之后，我们希望能够指定赢家和输家。战地的胜利者很容易命名。毕竟，李在 Appomattox 投降给格兰特。但赢得胜利，实现长期目标完全不同。北方击败了邦联军，但他们是否得到了他们真正想要的？南方在战场上输了，但从长远来看，他们的世界观赢得了胜利？

你怎么看？北方赢得了战争，但谁赢得了和平呢？

PEOPLE

Andrew Johnson: Vice President who became President when Lincoln was assassinated. He was from Tennessee and tried to carry out Lincoln's vision for a forgiving Reconstruction. He was opposed by the Radical Republicans in Congress, impeached but no convicted, and was ineffective.

Carpetbaggers: A nickname for people from the North who came to the South after the war to help with Reconstruction. The name comes from the thick fabric suitcases they carried. In the South, "carpetbagger" is an insult since it refers to an outsider who shows up and tries to tell you how you should live.

Charles Sumner: Leader of the Radical Republicans in the Senate.

Freedmen: Former slaves

Freedmen's Bureau: The government organization created to help former slaves transition to free life after the war. They are especially remembered for setting up and running schools.

Ku Klux Klan: A White terrorist organization that was formed immediately after the Civil War to counter Northern reconstruction efforts. They attacked African Americans and Republicans. They began to die out as Reconstruction ended, but later became popular again in the 1920s and were an important political force through the 1960s.

Radical Republicans: Members of the Republican Party who were strong abolitionists and wanted to punish the South.

Redeemers: White Democrats in the South who made it was their mission to restore as much of the antebellum social order as possible, including eliminating voting and civil rights for African Americans and establishing the Jim Crow system of segregation.

Rutherford B. Hayes: Republican who became president in 1877.

Samuel Tilden: Democratic Governor of New York. He ran for president in 1876 but lost but did not win as a result of the Compromise of 1877.

Tenant Farmer: When farmers pay to live and grow food on someone else's land.

Thaddeus Stevens: Leader of the Radical Republicans in the House of Representatives.

人

安德鲁·约翰逊：当林肯被暗杀时，他担任总统。他来自田纳西州，并试图履行林肯的宽容重建的愿景。他被国会的激进共和党人所反对，弹 ached 而没有被定罪，没有效力。

Carpetbaggers：一个绰号来自北方的人，战后来到南方帮忙重建。这个名字来自他们携带的厚厚的手提箱。在南方，"地毯袋"是一种侮辱，因为它是指出现并试图告诉你应该如何生活的局外人。

查尔斯·萨姆纳：参议院激进共和党人的领导人。

自由人：前奴隶

自由民主党：政府组织为帮助前奴隶过渡到战后的自由生活而设立。他们特别记得建立和运行学校。

Ku Klux Klan：内战后立即组建的一个白色恐怖组织，以对付北方的重建工作。他们袭击了非裔美国人和共和党人。随着重建的结束，他们开始死亡，但后来在二十世纪二十年代再次流行起来，是 1960 年代以来的重要政治力量。

激进的共和党人：共和党的成员是强大的废奴主义者，想惩罚南方。

救助者：南方白人民主人士是他们的使命，尽可能恢复尽可能多的前额社会秩序，包括消除非裔美国人的投票权和公民权利，并建立吉姆·克罗制度的隔离制度。

卢瑟福·海耶斯：1877 年成为总统的共和党人。

塞缪尔·蒂尔登：纽约市民总督。他于 1876 年经营总统，但由于 1877 年的妥协而失败，但没有赢。

租户农民：当农民在别人的土地上付钱生活和种植食物时。

Thaddeus Stevens：众议院激进共和党人的领导人。

KEY IDEAS

Amnesty: A general forgiving of crimes for an entire group of people. After the war, former Confederate soldiers were given amnesty from prosecution for treason.

Forty Acres and a Mule: This is what General Sherman promised all freed slaves. Since he had no power to seize property to give to the slaves, he wasn't able to fulfill his promise.

Grandfather Clause: A rule that stated that if a person's grandfather had voted, they could also. This was a way to allow poor and illiterate Whites who could not pay poll taxes or pass literacy tests to vote while preventing the descendants of former slaves from voting.

Impeachment: A legal process for removing a president or other elected official because of a crime they have committed.

Literacy Test: A test that a person had to pass in order to vote. White officials were able to manipulate the results so that African Americans didn't pass the tests and therefore could not vote.

Lynch: To hang a person without a trial. Lynching was used by the KKK and other White terrorist groups to intimidate African Americans.

Pardon: When a president or governor forgives a particular person's crime.

Poll Tax: A tax a person has to pay in order to vote. It effectively prevents poor people, especially aimed at African Americans, from voting.

Share Cropping: When farm workers use land that belongs to someone else and pay by sharing some of what they grow.

主要思想

大赦：一般人宽恕一群人的罪行。战后，前同盟士兵因叛国而被起诉。

四十英亩和骡子：这是谢尔曼将军答应所有释放的奴隶。由于他没有权力夺取财产给奴隶，所以他无法兑现他的诺言。

祖父条款：一个规定，如果一个人的祖父投票，他们也可以。这是一种允许穷人和文盲的白人，他们无法支付民意调查费用或通过扫盲考试进行投票，同时防止前奴隶的后裔投票。

弹劾：由于他们犯下的罪行而取消总统或其他当选官员的法律程序。

识字测试：一个人必须通过的测试才能投票。白人官员能够操纵结果，使非裔美国人没有通过测试，因此不能投票。

林奇：不要审判一个人。KKK 和其他白人恐怖组织利用 Lynching 来恐吓非裔美国人。

赦免：当总统或州长谅某人的罪行时。

投票税：一个人为了投票支付的税款。它有效地防止穷人，特别是针对非洲裔美国人的投票。

分享耕作：当农场工人使用属于别人的土地，并通过分享他们成长的一部分来支付费用。

LAWS

Amnesty Act: A law that gave political, especially voting rights back to former Confederate soldiers.

Civil Rights Bill of 1866: The first major law passed after the Civil War to provide basic rights to all African Americans.

Compromise of 1877: A deal struck between Republicans and Democrats after the close and contested presidential election between Rutherford B. Hayes and Samuel Tilden. Democrats allowed Hayes to become president in return for the end of Reconstruction and the removal of federal troops from the South.

Thirteenth Amendment: The amendment to the Constitution ratified in 1864 that ended slavery.

Fourteenth Amendment: The amendment to the Constitution ratified in 1865 that give citizenship to anyone born in the United States, effectively making former slaves citizens.

Fifteenth Amendment: The amendment to the Constitution ratified in 1869 that guaranteed the right all men regardless of race.

Jim Crow: The nickname for a system of laws that enforced segregation. For example, African Americans had separate schools, rode in the backs of busses, could not drink from White drinking fountains, and could not eat in restaurants or stay in hotels, etc.

Lodge Force Bills: Proposed by Henry Cabot Lodge, these laws provided federal overseers to make sure that African Americans could vote. Later, however, they were rescinded and the Jim Crow system was put into effect.

法律

"大赦法"：一项赋予政治，特别是投票权的前同盟士兵的法律。

1866 年"民权法案"：内战后通过的第一个主要法律，为所有非裔美国人提供基本权利。

1877 年的妥协：共和党和民主党在封闭之后达成协议，并在卢瑟福·海耶斯和塞缪尔·蒂尔登之间竞选总统选举。民主党人允许海耶斯成为总统，以换取重建的结束，并从南方撤出联邦部队。

第十三修正案：1864 年批准的"宪法"修正案终止了奴隶制。

第十四修正案：1865 年批准的"宪法"修正案赋予了在美国出生的任何人公民身份，有效地使前奴隶公民。

第十五修正案：1869 年批准的"宪法"修正案保证所有男子不分种族的权利。

吉姆·克劳：吉姆·克洛克：强制隔离的法律体系的绰号。例如，非裔美国人有独立的学校，骑在公共汽车的后面，不能从白色饮水机喝酒，不能在餐馆吃饭或留在酒店等。

小屋力图：由亨利·卡博特洛奇提出，这些法律提供了联邦监督员，以确保非裔美国人可以投票。后来，他们被取消了，吉姆·乌鸦的制度已经生效了。

EVENTS

Presidential Reconstruction: The period immediately after the Civil War ended when reconstruction was based on Lincoln and especially President Andrew Johnson's lenient and forgiving policies.

Radical Reconstruction: The later period of reconstruction which was led by the Radical Republicans in Congress rather than by President Andrew Johnson.

活动

总统重建：内战结束之后的时期，根据林肯，特别是安德鲁·约翰逊总统宽容和宽恕的政策，结束了重建。

激进重建：由共和党激进共和党在国会而不是由安德鲁·约翰逊总统领导的后期重建。

WAS THE CIVIL WAR

A RIGHTEOUS JUDGEMENT

FOR AMERICA'S EMBRACE OF

SLAVERY?

So there it is, the story of the struggle by millions of Americans to deal with the questions of slavery and secession. In the end, our leaders failed to preserve the peace, we fought our bloodiest war, which the North won, thus ending slavery and preserving the Union.

However, as you now know, the war, for all the changes that it caused, did not entirely remake the segregated social order of the South or bring real equality between the races. Since, as many historians have argued, the North may have won the war but the South seemed to win the peace.

Slavery was indeed terrible, for both the slaves, and Whites who were stained by the terrible thing that they were doing. White Americans may have grown wealthy by the toil of millions of slaves, but in the end, there was a price to pay.

That price, President Lincoln argued, was the devastation and heartache of war. He believed in a just God who let the war come as a righteous punishment for slavery.

What do you think? Was the Civil War a righteous judgement for America's embrace of slavery?

那就是数百万美国人为处理奴隶制和分裂问题而进行斗争的故事。最后，我们的领导人不能维护和平，我们打败了北方最血腥的战争，从而结束了奴隶制，维护了联盟。

但是，正如你们现在所知道的那样，战争所造成的一切变化并没有完全重塑南方的社会秩序分离，也没有实现种族间的平等。由于许多历史学家认为，北方可能赢得了战争，但南方似乎赢得了和平。

对于两个奴隶来说，奴隶制确实是可怕的，而那些被他们正在做的可怕事物玷污的白人。白人美国人可能因数百万奴隶的辛劳而变得富有，但最终还是要付出代价。

林肯总统认为这个价格是战争的破坏和心痛。他相信一个公正的上帝，让战争成为对奴隶制的正义惩罚。

你怎么看？内战是美国拥抱奴隶制的正义判断？

Read this Book

Resources